

ARBITRATION UNDER ANNEX VII OF THE UNITED NATIONS  
CONVENTION ON THE LAW OF THE SEA



**REPUBLIC OF THE PHILIPPINES**

**v.**

**PEOPLE'S REPUBLIC OF CHINA**

**SUPPLEMENTAL DOCUMENTS OF THE PHILIPPINES**

**VOLUME V  
ANNEXES**

**19 NOVEMBER 2015**

ARBITRATION UNDER ANNEX VII OF THE UNITED NATIONS  
CONVENTION ON THE LAW OF THE SEA

---

**REPUBLIC OF THE PHILIPPINES**

**v.**

**PEOPLE'S REPUBLIC OF CHINA**

SUPPLEMENTAL DOCUMENTS OF THE PHILIPPINES

VOLUME V  
ANNEXES

---

19 NOVEMBER 2015



## VOLUME V

### EXHIBITS

#### ADDITIONAL ANNEXES

- Annex 807 EOMAP GmbH & Co, *Satellite Derived Bathymetry for Selected Features in the South China Sea* (18 Nov. 2015)
- Annex 808 Tommy T.B. Koh, “The Origins of the 1982 Convention on the Law of the Sea”, *Malay Law Review*, Vol. 29, No. 1 (1987)
- Annex 809 United Nations Environment Programme, Coordinating Body on the Seas of East Asia, *Action Plan for the Protection and Sustainable Development of the Marine and Coastal Areas of the East Asian Region*, U.N. Doc. UNEP(OCA)/EAS IG5/6, Annex IV (1994)
- Annex 810 *Oxford Chinese Dictionary* (2010)
- Annex 811 United Nations Environment Programme, Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora, *Appendices I, II, and III* (5 Feb. 2015)
- Annex 812 J. Hardy & S. O'Connor, “China completes runway on Fiery Cross Reef”, *IHS Jane's Defence Weekly* (25 Sept. 2015)
- Annex 813 Derek Watkins, “What China Has Been Building in the South China Sea”, *New York Times* (27 Oct. 2015)
- Annex 814 “Habitación”, *Real Academia Española, Diccionario de la lengua española [Dictionary of the Royal Spanish Academy]* (accessed 18 Nov. 2015)
- Annex 815 “Habitation”, *Oxford English Dictionary* (accessed 16 Nov. 2015)
- Annex 816 “Life”, *Oxford English Dictionary* (accessed 18 Nov. 2015)
- Annex 817 “Mantener”, *Real Academia Española, Diccionario de la lengua española [Dictionary of the Royal Spanish Academy]* (accessed 18 Nov. 2015)
- Annex 818 “Rock”, *Oxford English Dictionary* (accessed 18 Nov. 2015)
- Annex 819 “Sustain”, *Oxford English Dictionary* (accessed 18 Nov. 2015)



**Annex 807**

EOMAP GmbH & Co, *Satellite Derived Bathymetry for Selected Features in the South China Sea* (18 Nov. 2015)



# Gaven Reef





# Gaven Reef, Satellite Derived Bathymetry

## Data Source

Satellite sensor data: WorldView 2  
 Spatial resolution: 2m  
 Date of recording: 2012-01-15

## Processing method

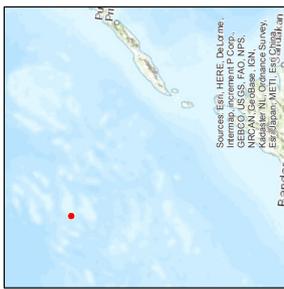
Satellite data were processed with the Modular and Hierarchical Bathymetry (MHB) software designed for the physically based assessment of water depth.

## Legend

Bathymetry, Mean High Water (MHW) [m]

0 - 1
-1 - 0
-2 - -1
-3 - -2
-4 - -3
-5 - -4
-6 - -5
-7 - -6
Data flags

## Overview



## Spatial Reference

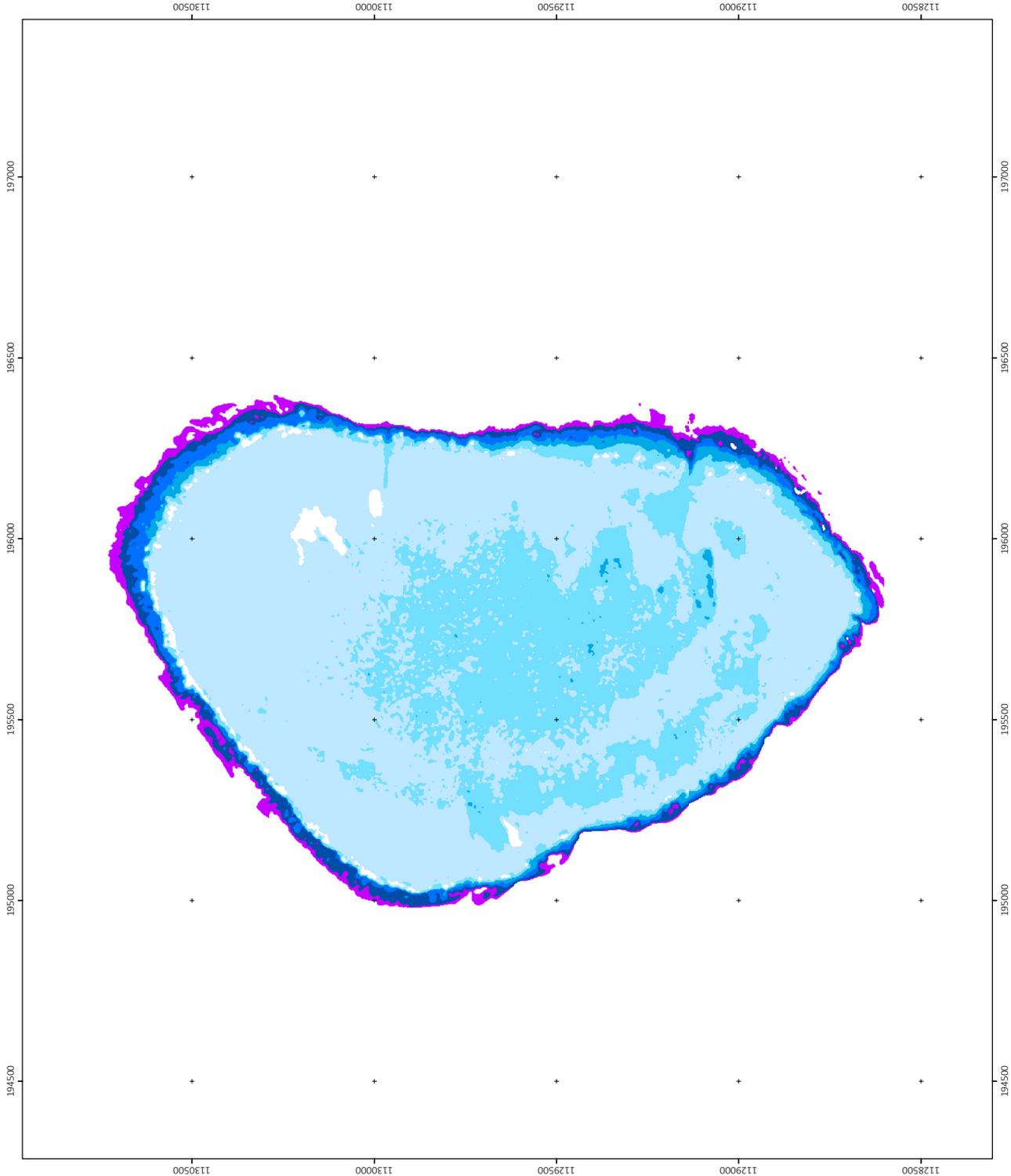
UTM Zone: UTM Zone 50N  
 Datum: WGS 84  
 EPSG code: 32650



© Map produced by  
 EOMAP GmbH & Co.KG  
 Earth Observation and Mapping,  
 Schwanenweg 1  
 D-82229 Seefeld, Germany  
 Phone +49 (0)8152-99861-15  
 E-mail info@eomap.com  
 http://www.eomap.com



Date of issue: 2012/01/15  
 Version: 1.0



# McKenna-Hughes Reef

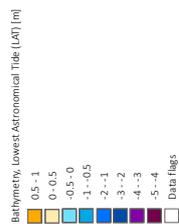
### Hughes Reef and McKennan Reef, Satellite Derived Bathymetry

**Data Source**  
 Satellite sensor data: Quickbird  
 Spatial Resolution: 2m  
 Date of recording: 2004-02-02

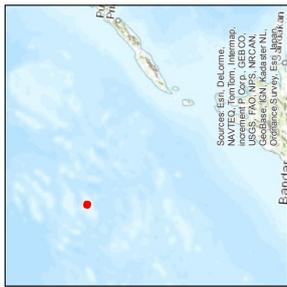
**Processing method**

Satellite data were processed with the Modular and version 4.0.0 (M4) by EOMAP. M4 is designed for the physically based assessment of water depth.

**Legend**



**Overview**



**Spatial Reference**

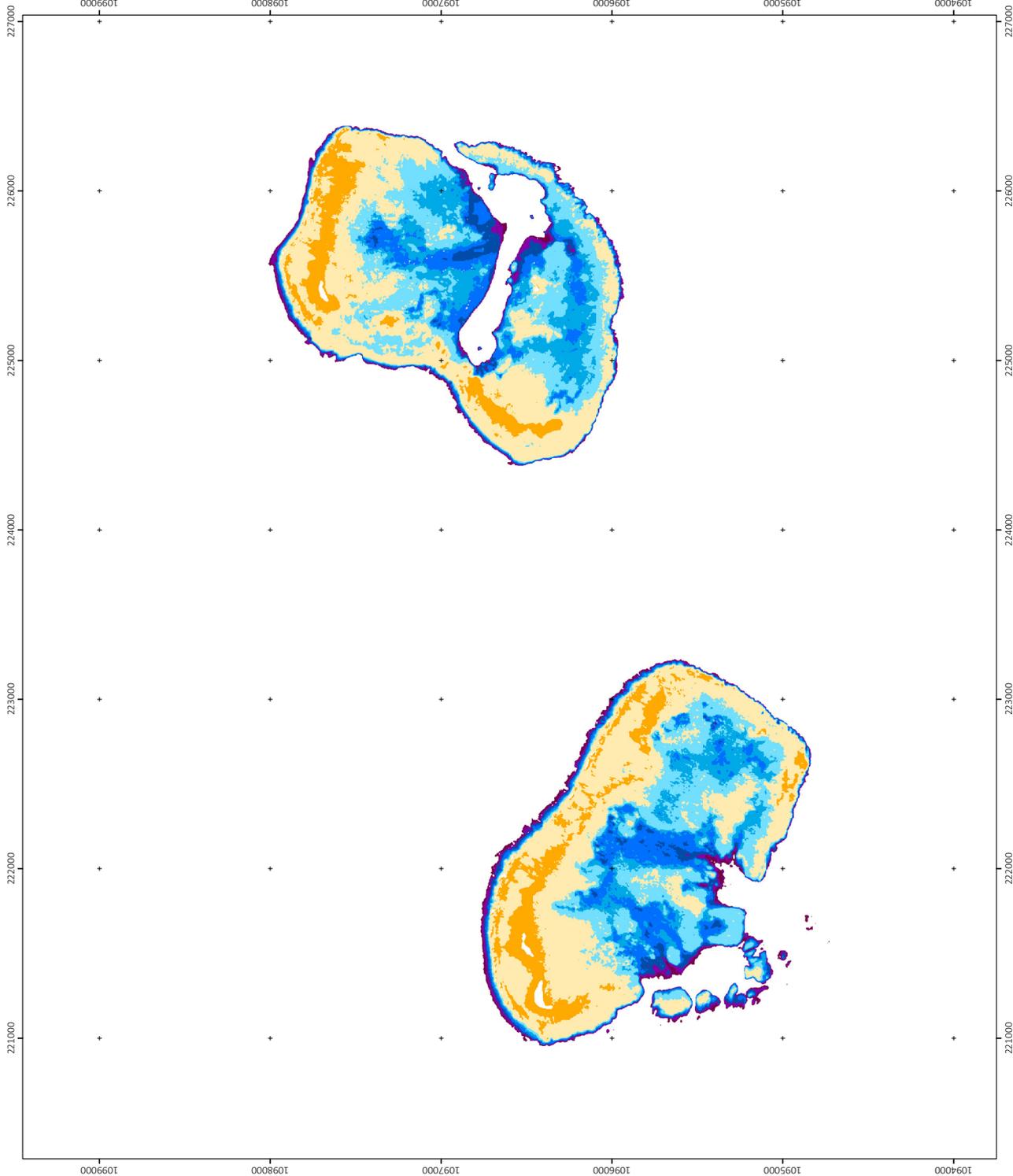
UTM Zone: UTM Zone 50N  
 Datum: WGS 84  
 EPSG code: 31450



© Map produced by  
 EOMAP GmbH & Co.KG  
 Earth Observation and Mapping,  
 Seefeldstrasse 41  
 D-82229 Seefeld, Germany  
 Phone +49 (0)5152-99861-15  
 E-mail info@eomap.com  
 http://www.eomap.com



Date of creation: 2010/11/19  
 Version: 1.0



### Hughes Reef and Mckenan Reef, Satellite Derived Bathymetry

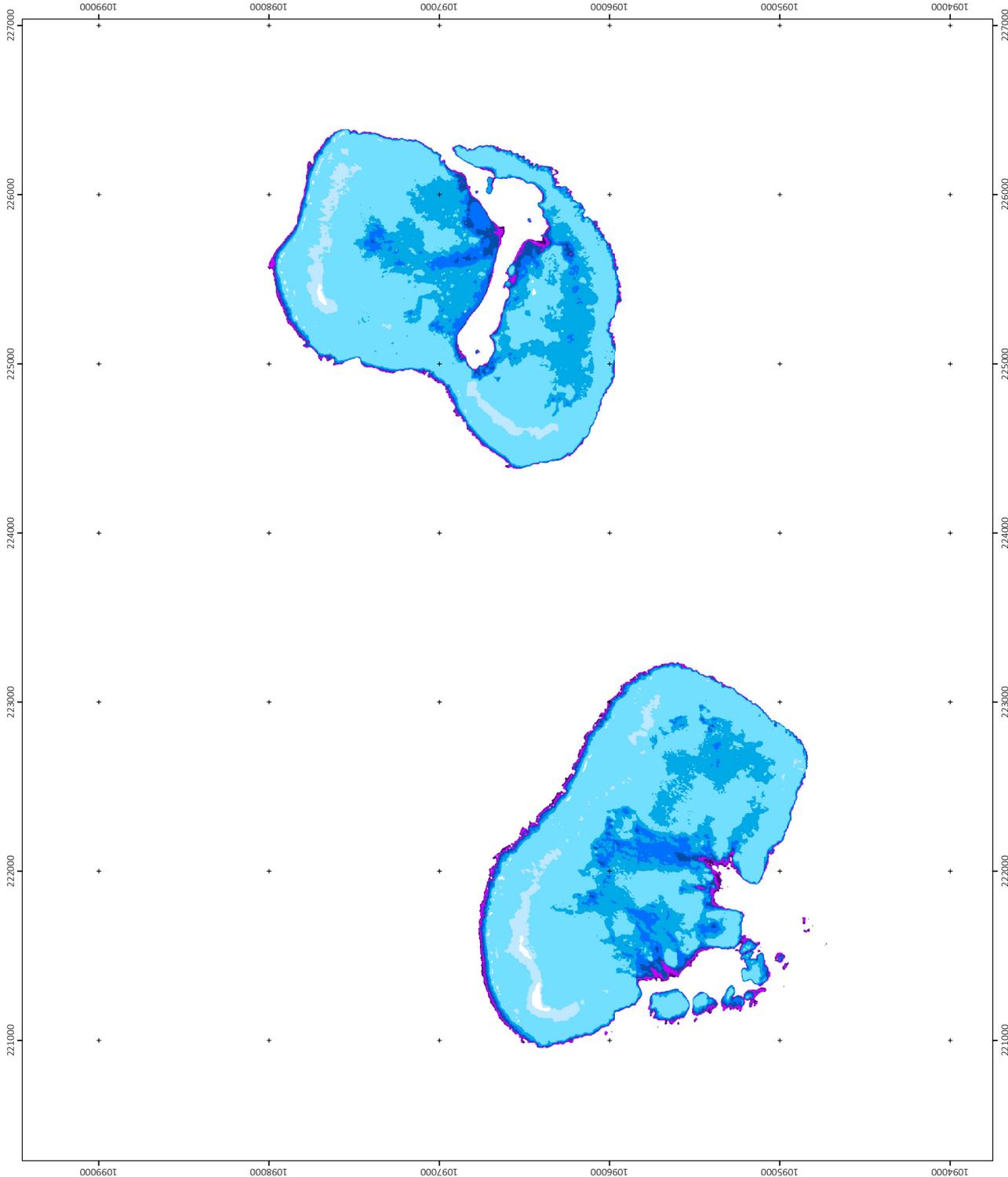
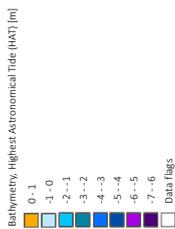
**Data Source**

Satellite sensor data: Quickbird  
 Spectral bands: 4  
 Spatial resolution: 2m  
 Date of recording: 2004-02-02

#### Processing method

Satellite data were processed with the Modular and Inversion System (MIPS) by EOMAP. MIPS is designed for the physically based assessment of water depth.

#### Legend



#### Overview



#### Spatial Reference

UTM Zone: UTM Zone 50N  
 Datum: WGS 84  
 EPSG code: 32650



© Map produced by EOMAP GmbH, Earth Observation and Mapping, Schlosshof 4, D-82229 Seeheld, Germany  
 Phone +49 (0)18152 - 59861-15  
 E-mail info@eomap.com  
 http://www.eomap.com



Date of issue: 2020/01/16  
 Version: 1.0

Hughes Reef and McKenna Reef,  
Satellite Derived Bathymetry

**Data Source**  
 Satellite sensor data: Quickbird  
 Spatial resolution: 2m  
 Date of recording: 2004-02-02

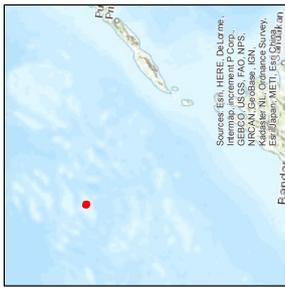
**Processing method**

Satellite data was processed with the Modular and Integrated Processor (MIP) by EOMAP. MIP is a software designed for the physically based assessment of water depth.

**Legend**

Bathymetry, Mean High Water (MHW) [m]  
 0 - 1  
 -1 - 0  
 -2 - -1  
 -3 - -2  
 -4 - -3  
 -5 - -4  
 -6 - -5  
 -7 - -6  
 Data flags

**Overview**



**Spatial Reference**

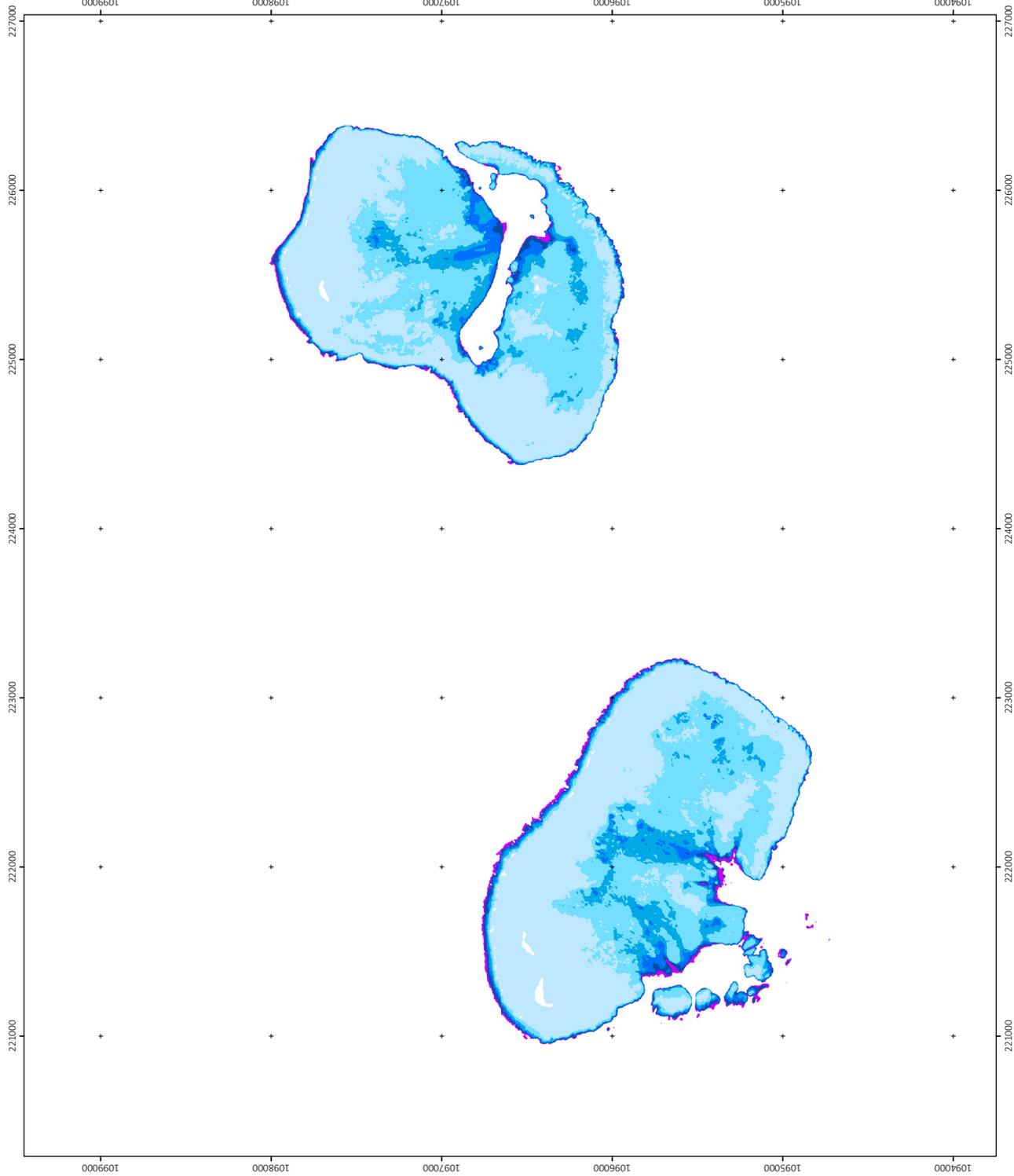
UTM Zone: UTM Zone 50N  
 Datum: WGS 84  
 EPSG code: 31450



© Map produced by  
 EOMAP GmbH & Co.KG  
 Photogrammetry and Mapping,  
 Schloßhof 4  
 D-82299 Seefeld, Germany  
 Phone +49 (0)8152-93861-15  
 E-mail info@eomap.com  
 http://www.eomap.com



Date: 06/06/2019 10:10  
 User: 10



# Mischief Reef

### Mischief Reef, Satellite Derived Bathymetry

**Data Source**  
 Satellite sensor data: WorldView-2  
 Spatial resolution: 2m  
 Date of recording: 2014-02-21

**Processing method**

Satellite data was processed with the Modular and integrated Bathymetry (MIB) EOMAP software designed for the physically based assessment of water depth.

**Legend**

Bathymetry, Lowest Astronomical Tide (LAT) [m]

0.5 - 1
0 - 0.5
-0.5 - 0
-1 - -0.5
-2 - -1
-3 - -2
-4 - -3
-5 - -4
Data flags

**Overview**



**Spatial Reference**

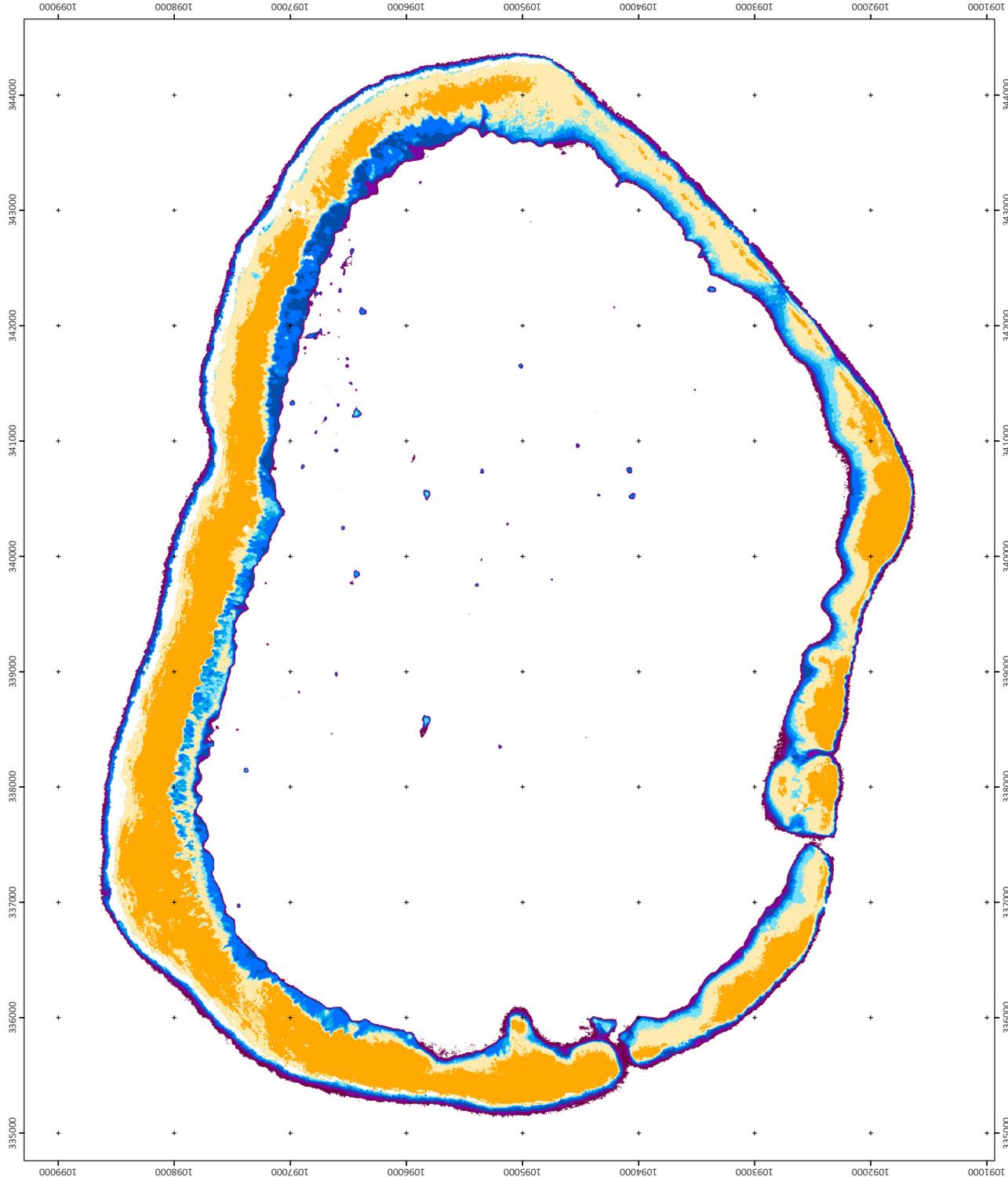
UTM Zone: UTM Zone 50N  
 Datum: WGS 84  
 EPSG code: 32650



© Map produced by  
 EOMAP GmbH & Co.KG  
 Software Development and Mapping,  
 Schloßberg 4  
 D-82229 Seeßfeld, Germany  
 Phone +49 (0)8152 - 99861-15  
 E-mail info@eomap.com  
 http://www.eomap.com



Date created: 2016/10/16  
 Version: 1.0





### Mischief Reef, Satellite Derived Bathymetry

#### Data Source

Satellite sensor data: WorldView-2  
 Spatial resolution: 2m  
 Date of recording: 2014-02-21

#### Processing method

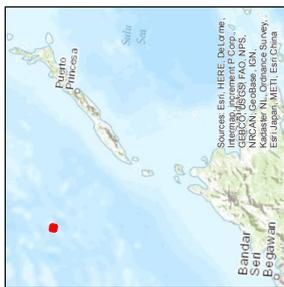
Satellite data were processed with the Modular and Integrated Bathymetry System (MIBS) which is designed for the physically based assessment of water depth.

#### Legend

Bathymetry, Mean High Water (MHW) [m]

0 - 1
-1 - 0
-2 - -1
-3 - -2
-4 - -3
-5 - -4
-6 - -5
-7 - -6
Data flags

#### Overview



#### Spatial Reference

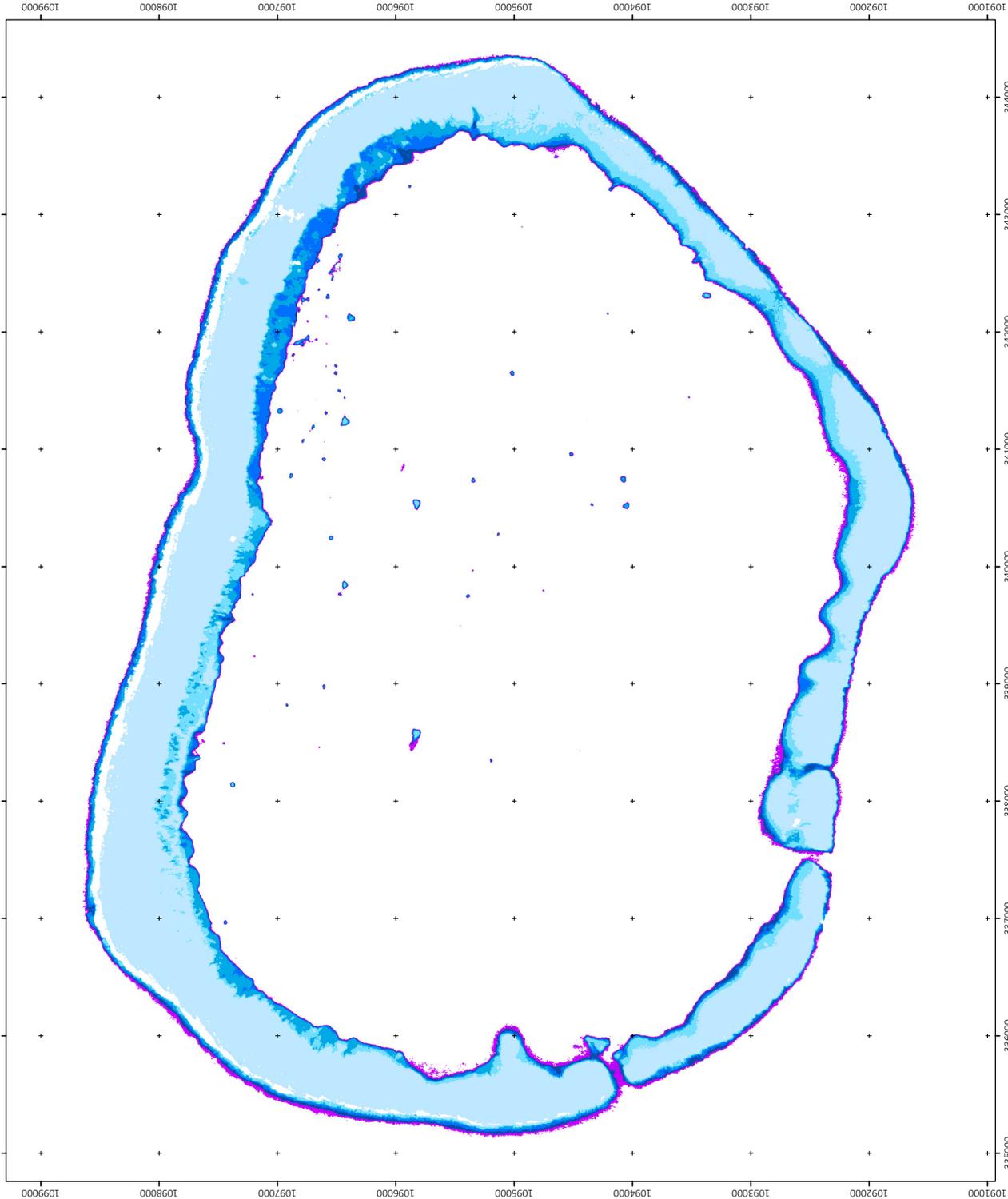
UTM Zone: UTM Zone 50N  
 Datum: WGS 84  
 EPSG code: 32650



© Map produced by  
 EOMAP GmbH & Co.KG  
 Earth Observation and Mapping,  
 Schwanenweg 1  
 D-82229 Seefeld, Germany  
 Phone +49 (0)8152-99861-15  
 E-mail info@eomap.com  
 http://www.eomap.com



Date: March 2016  
 Version: 1.0



# Second Thomas Shoal

**Second Thomas Shoal,  
Satellite Derived Bathymetry**

**Data Source**  
 Satellite sensor data: WorldView-2  
 Spectral Bands: 4  
 Spatial Resolution: 2m  
 Date of recording: 2011-03-18

**Processing method**

Satellite data were processed with the Modular and Versioned Ocean (MVO) software which is specifically designed for the physically based assessment of water depth.

**Legend**

Bathymetry, Lowest Astronomical Tide (LAT) [m]

0.5 - 1
0 - 0.5
-0.5 - 0
-1 - -0.5
-2 - -1
-3 - -2
-4 - -3
-5 - -4
Data flags

**Overview**



**Spatial Reference**

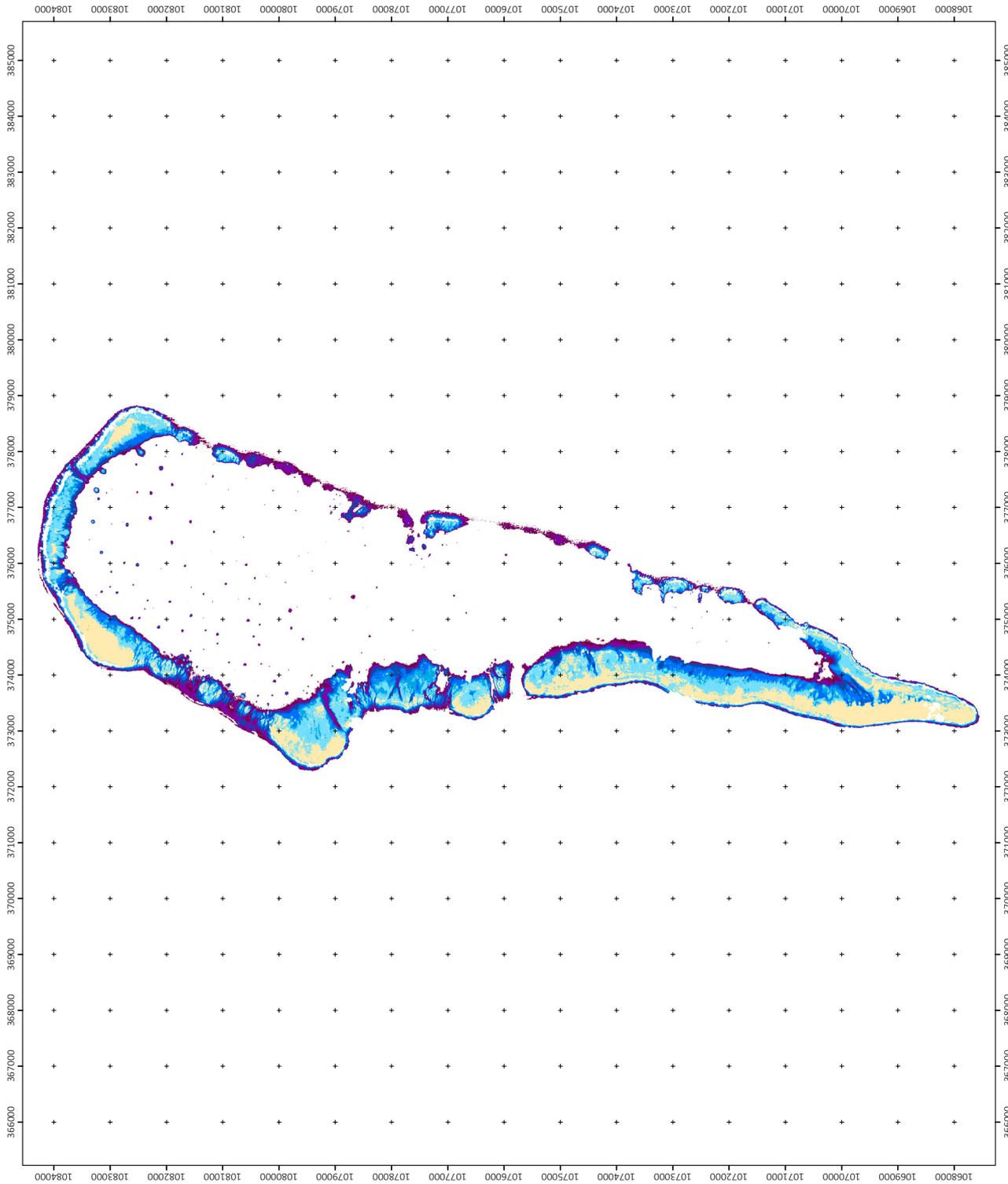
UTM Zone: UTM Zone 50N  
 Datum: WGS 84  
 EPSG code: 32650



© Map produced by  
 EOMAP GmbH & Co.KG  
 Earth Observation and Mapping,  
 D-82229 Seefeld, Germany  
 Phone +49 (0)8152 - 99861-15  
 E-mail info@eomap.com  
 http://www.eomap.com



Date created: 20/11/16  
 Version: 1.0



### Second Thomas Shoal, Satellite Derived Bathymetry

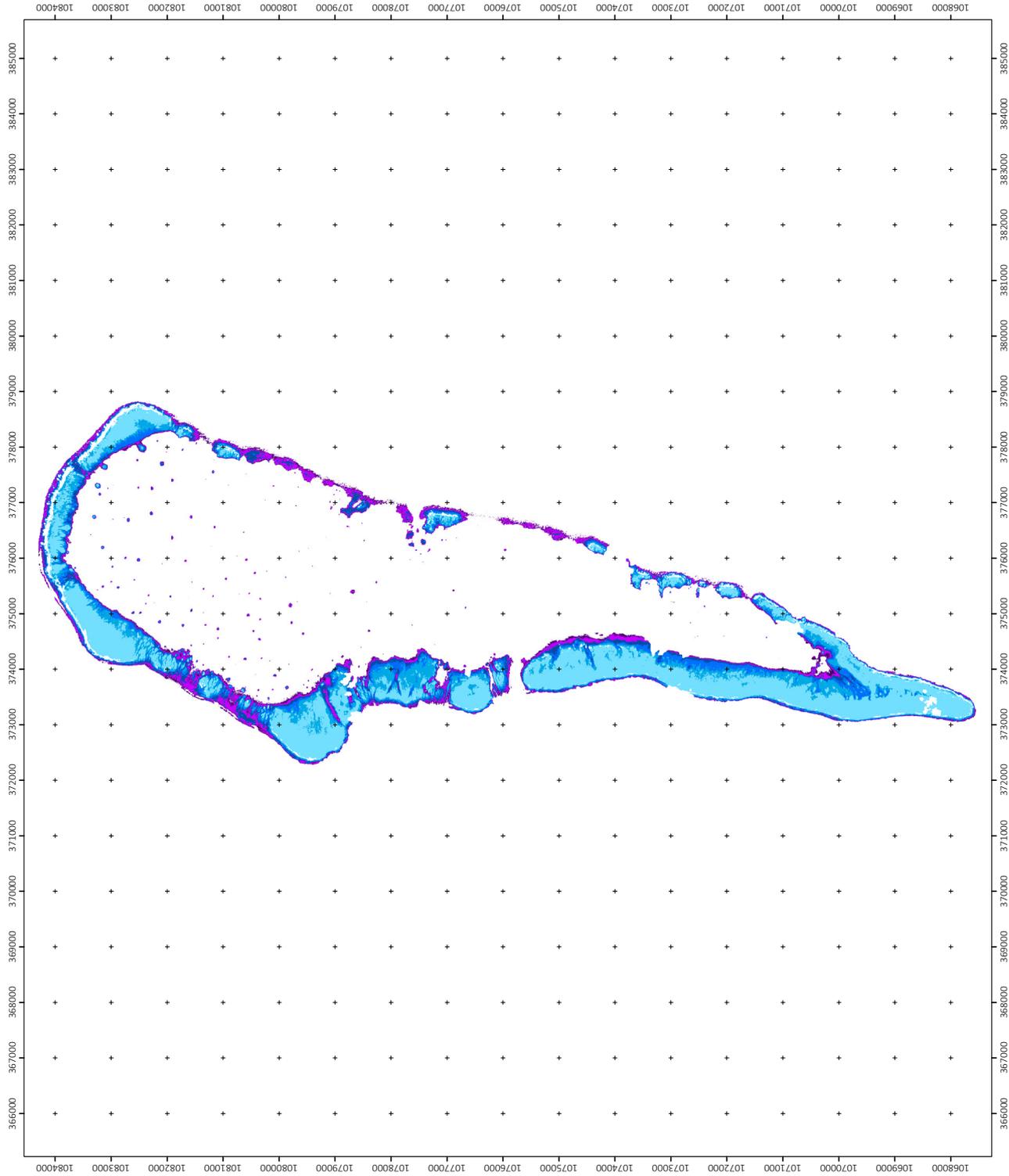
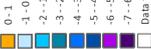
#### Data Source

Satellite sensor data: WorldView-2  
Spectral bands: 8  
Spatial resolution: 2m  
Date of recording: 2011-03-18

#### Processing method

Satellite data were processed with the Modular and Inversion System (MIP) by EOMAP. MIP is designed for the physically based assessment of water depth.

#### Bathymetry, Highest-Astronomical Tide (MAT) [m]



#### Overview



#### Spatial Reference

UTM Zone: UTM Zone 50N  
Datum: WGS 84  
EPSG code: 3850



© Map produced by  
EOMAP GmbH & Co.KG  
Earth Observation and Mapping,  
Schleshof 4,  
D-82229 Steinfeld, Germany  
Phone: +49 89 333 93861-15  
Email: info@eomap.com  
http://www.eomap.com



Date of issue: 2011-03-18  
Version: 1.0

### Second Thomas Shoal, Satellite Derived Bathymetry

**Data Source**  
 Satellite sensor data: WorldView-2  
 Spatial resolution: 2m  
 Date of recording: 2011-03-18

**Processing method**

Satellite data were processed with the Modular and Hierarchical Bathymetry (MHB) algorithm designed for the physically based assessment of water depth.

**Bathymetry, Mean High Water (MHW) [m]**

0 - 1
-1 - 0
-2 - -1
-3 - -2
-4 - -3
-5 - -4
-6 - -5
-7 - -6
Data flags

**Overview**



**Spatial Reference**

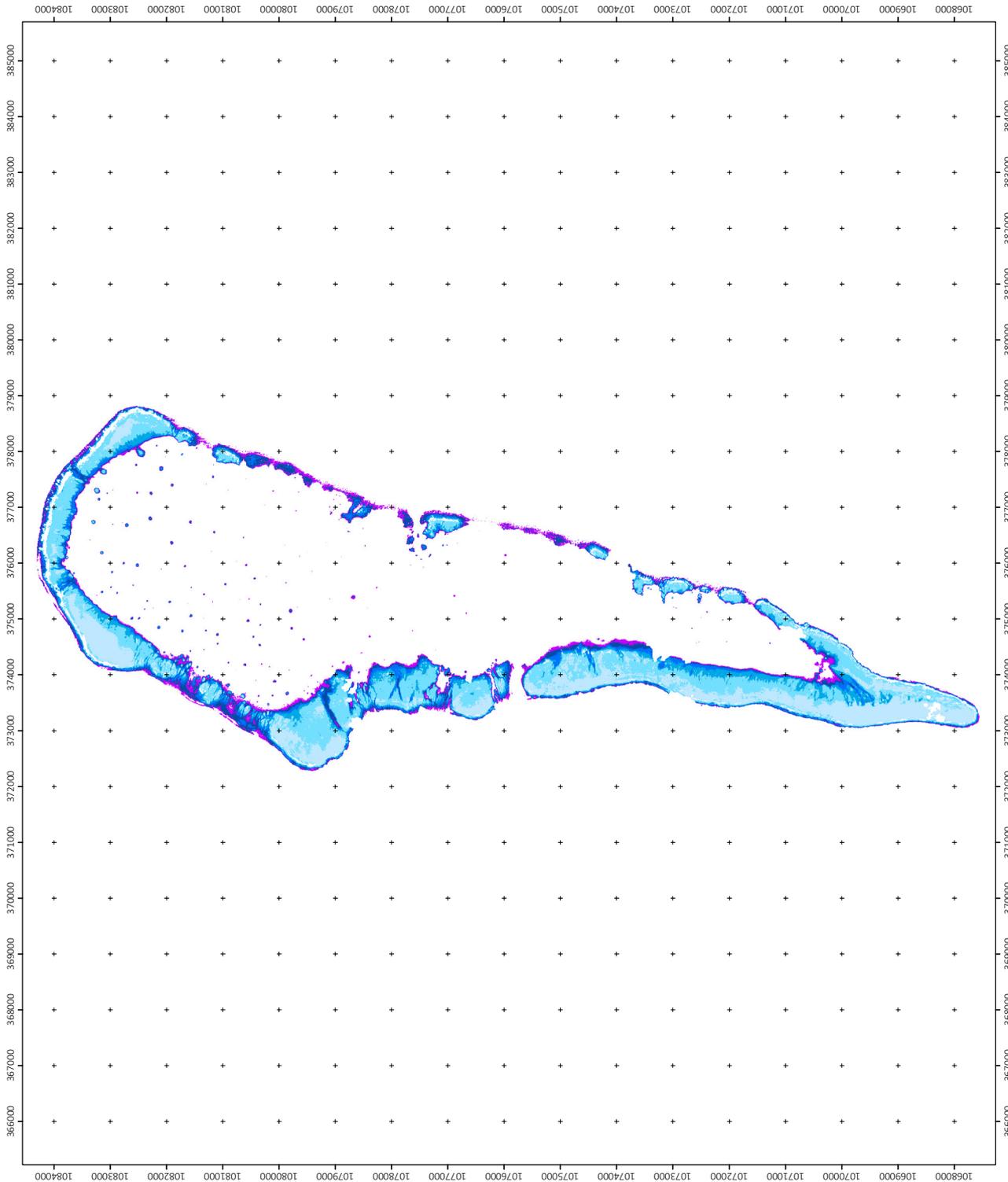
UTM Zone: UTM Zone 50N  
 Datum: WGS 84  
 EPSG code: 32650



© Map produced by  
 EOMAP GmbH & Co.KG  
 Earth Observation and Mapping,  
 Sandweg 1  
 D-82229 Seefeld, Germany  
 Phone +49 (0)8152-99861-15  
 E-mail info@eomap.com  
 http://www.eomap.com



Date: March 20, 2018  
 Sheet 10



# Subi Reef

### Subi Reef, Satellite Derived Bathymetry

#### Data Source

Satellite sensor data: WorldView-2  
 Spatial Resolution: 2m  
 Date of recording: 2014-01-08

#### Processing method

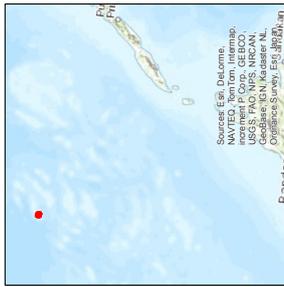
Satellite data were processed with the Modular and Hierarchical Bathymetry (MHB) algorithm, which is designed for the physically based assessment of water depth.

#### Legend

Bathymetry, Lowest Astronomical Tide (LAT) [m]

0.5 - 1
0 - 0.5
-0.5 - 0
-1 - -0.5
-2 - -1
-3 - -2
-4 - -3
-5 - -4
Data flags

#### Overview



#### Spatial Reference

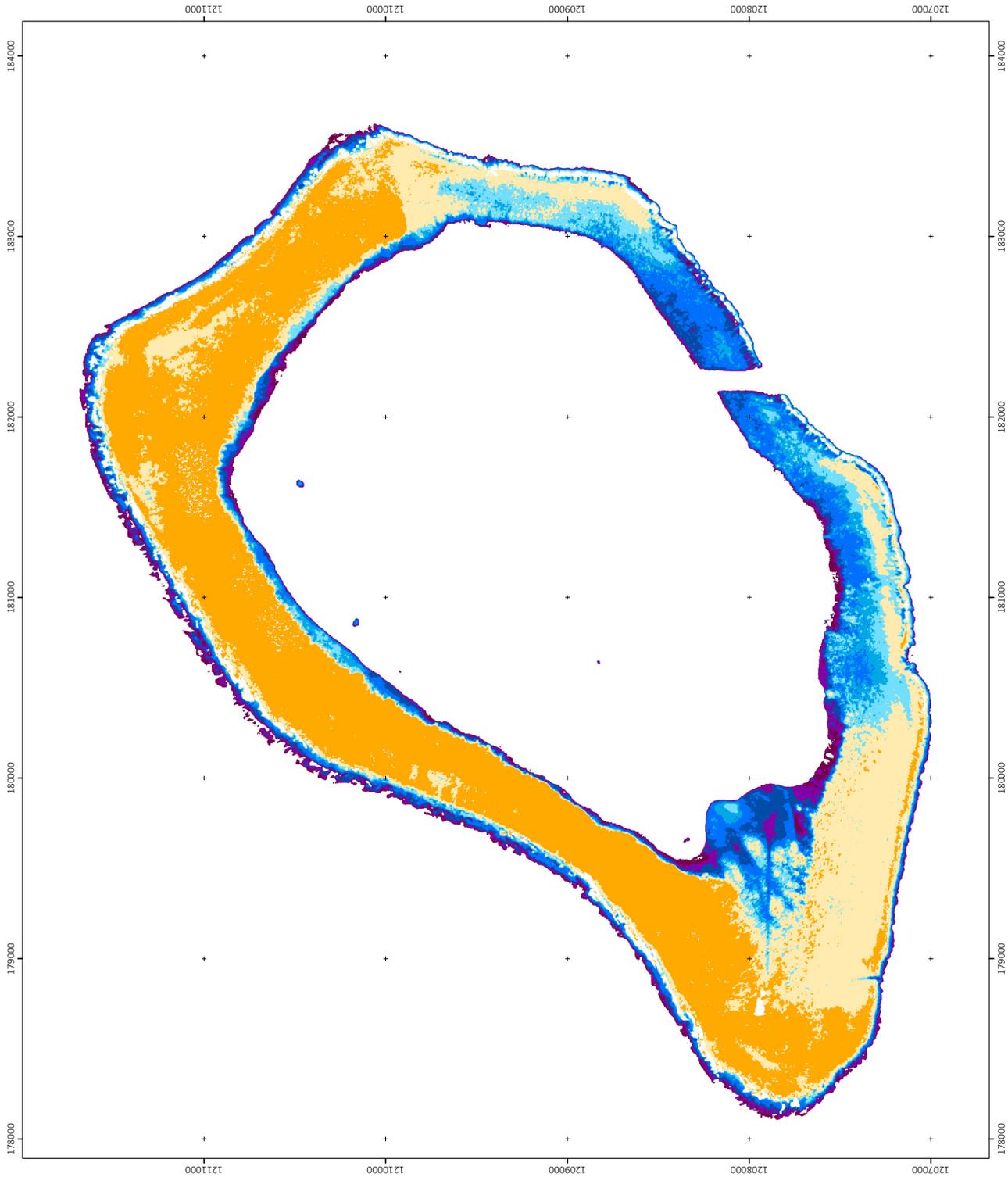
UTM Zone: UTM Zone 50N  
 Datum: WGS 84  
 EPSG code: 32650



© Map produced by  
 EOMAP GmbH & Co. KG  
 Earth Observation and Mapping,  
 Schönlagerstraße 1  
 D-82229 Seefeld, Germany  
 Phone +49 (0)8152 - 998601-15  
 E-mail info@eomap.com  
 http://www.eomap.com



Date created: 2019/10/16  
 Version: 1.0



**Subi Reef,  
Satellite Derived Bathymetry**

**Data Source**  
 Satellite sensor data: WorldView-2  
 Spectral bands: 8  
 Spatial resolution: 2m  
 Date of recording: 2014-01-08

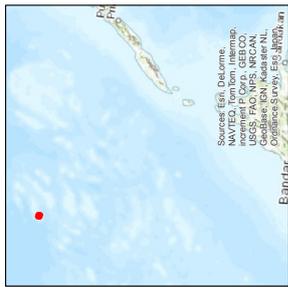
**Processing method**

Satellite data were processed with the Modular and Inversion System (MIP) by EOMAP. MIP is designed for the physically based assessment of water depth.

**Legend**

- Bathymetry, Highest Astronomical Tide (HAT) [m]**
- 0 - 1
  - 1 - 0
  - 2 - -1
  - 3 - -2
  - 4 - -3
  - 5 - -4
  - 6 - -5
  - 7 - -6
  - Data flags

**Overview**



**Spatial Reference**

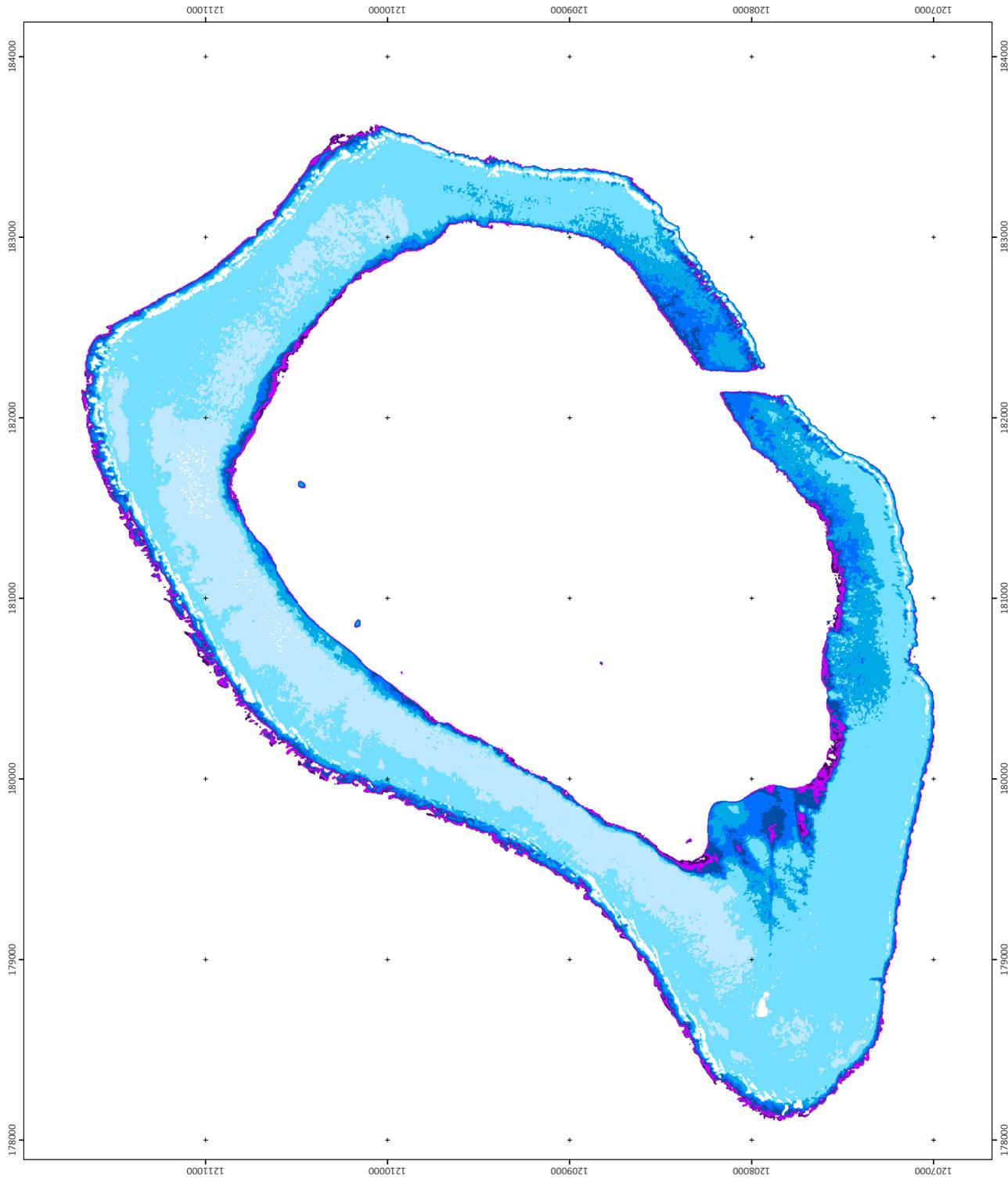
UTM Zone: UTM Zone 50N  
 Datum: WGS 84  
 EPSG code: 32650



© Map produced by  
 EOMAP GmbH  
 Earth Observation and Mapping,  
 Schobshof 4  
 D-82229 Seeßfeld, Germany  
 Phone: +49 (0)8152-99863-15  
 E-mail: info@eomap.com  
 http://www.eomap.com



Date of issue: 20151116  
 Version: 1.0





**Annex 808**

Tommy T.B. Koh, "The Origins of the 1982 Convention on the Law of the Sea",  
*Malay Law Review*, Vol. 29, No. 1 (1987)



## THE ORIGINS OF THE 1982 CONVENTION ON THE LAW OF THE SEA\*

Nine years after it began, the Third UN Conference on the Law of the Sea adopted the UN Convention On The Law Of The Sea on 30 April 1982. This article, the first in a series of three, traces the evolution of the law of the sea. In the beginning there was chaos. Out of the chaos an international legal order, based upon a three-mile territorial sea, gradually emerged. In time, this order was increasingly challenged by the unilateral claims of coastal states. Faced with the threat of legal chaos, the international community decided, in 1970, to convene the Third UN Conference on the Law of the Sea in an attempt to build a new international legal order for the sea.

### I. THE BIRTH OF THE OLD LEGAL ORDER

ON the 30th of April 1982, the Third United Nations Conference on the Law of the Sea adopted the world's first comprehensive treaty dealing with all aspects of the seas and its resources. The treaty is called the UN Convention on the Law of the Sea. It was opened for signature in Montego Bay, Jamaica, on the 10th of December 1982 and was signed by 119 countries on that first day.

How will the convention affect the multi-faceted activities of man in ocean space? Will the convention safeguard the world community's interest in commercial navigation? How does the convention resolve the conflict between coastal fishermen and foreign fishermen? Will the convention lead to the better management and more equitable utilisation of the world's fish stocks? This article and the two to follow will attempt to answer these and other questions concerning the new treaty.

To begin, a brief retrospective look at the history of this branch of international law may be helpful. In 1493, Pope Alexander VI promulgated a Papal Bull, "Inter Caetera", under which a line was drawn down the Atlantic Ocean.<sup>1</sup> Under the Papal Bull, the ocean space and territories west of that line discovered by Spain belonged to her. The ocean space and territories discovered by Portugal, east of that line, belonged to her. The two powers, Spain and Portugal, concluded a bilateral treaty at Tordesillas on 7 June 1494, in line with the Papal Bull.<sup>2</sup> England, followed by Holland, protested against these agreements.

When the Spanish ambassador to England complained against the voyage of Sir Francis Drake to the Pacific, Queen Elizabeth I replied: "The

---

\* This is the first in a series of three articles tracing the evolution of the Law of the Sea, by Prof. Tommy T.B. Koh. The other two articles will be published in forthcoming issues of this Review, in the December 1987 and July 1988 issues, respectively.

We thank Mr R.C. Beckman for his help in editing this article.

<sup>1</sup> For a history of these early developments, see R. Lapidoth, "Freedom of Navigation — its Legal History and its Normative Basis" (1975) 6 J. Mar. L. & Comm. 259 at 261-268; W. Fulton, *The Sovereignty of the Sea* (1911) p. 105-107. The Papal Bull is reprinted in (1973) 4 *Annals of International Studies*, p. 309.

<sup>2</sup> (1973) 4 *Annals of International Studies*, p. 317.

use of the sea and air is common to all; neither can any title to the ocean belong to any people or private man, for as much as neither nature nor regard of the public use permitteth any possession thereof.”<sup>3</sup>

The view of Spain and Portugal, often referred to as “*Mare Clausum*” was that the sea was capable of being subject to dominion and sovereignty. Spain claimed exclusive dominion over the Pacific Ocean and the Gulf of Mexico. Portugal claimed exclusive dominion over the Atlantic Ocean, south of Morocco, and the Indian Ocean. The opposing view of the English Queen, Elizabeth I, commonly referred to as “*Mare Liberum*” was that the sea was incapable of appropriation as it was a *res communis*, belonging to all nations. The struggle between these two schools of thought was to continue for three hundred years, from the fifteenth to the eighteenth century before the law was settled in favour of *mare liberum*.

In 1601, a naval commander of the Dutch East India Company captured a Portuguese galleon, loaded with a valuable cargo of spices, in the Strait of Malacca. At that time Portugal was under the dominion of Spain and Spain was at war with Holland. The ship, Santa Catherina, was brought to Amsterdam to be sold as prize. Some shareholders of the Dutch East India Company objected to the sale. The company retained a young Dutch lawyer, Hugo Grotius, to prepare an opinion on the question. Grotius completed his legal brief, entitled “*De Jure Praedae*” (on the Law of Spoils) in 1604, Chapter XII of the brief was entitled “*Mare Liberum*” (The Free Sea). This chapter was published anonymously in 1609.<sup>4</sup> Grotius later included it as part of a larger work entitled “*Re Jure Belli ac Pacis*” which was published in 1625. According to R.P. Anand,<sup>5</sup> Grotius was aware of and influenced by the then prevailing Asian maritime practices of free navigation and trade in writing “*Mare Liberum*”.

Ruth Lapidoth summarizes the Grotian thesis as follows: “Grotius bases the freedom of the high seas on two principles: 1. Things that can neither be seized nor enclosed cannot become property — they are common to all and their use pertains to the whole human race; 2. Things which have been created by nature in such a state that their usage by one does not preclude or prejudice their use by others, are common, and their use belongs to all men. According to Grotius, on the high seas nobody can claim dominion or exclusive fisheries rights nor an exclusive right of navigation. The sea is under no one’s dominion except God’s; it cannot by its very nature be appropriated; it is common to all, and its use, by the general consent of mankind, is common, and what belongs to all cannot be appropriated by one; nor can prescription or custom justify any claim of the kind, because no one has the power to grant a privilege adverse to mankind in general.”<sup>6</sup>

Meanwhile, the view of the English government had moved from the *mare liberum* of Queen Elizabeth I to the *mare clausum* of the Scottish kings, the Stuarts. Perhaps mindful of Scotland’s dependence on coastal fisheries and envious of the rise of Holland as a great maritime and trading power, King James I and his successors laid claim to the seas surrounding the British

<sup>3</sup> Fulton, *supra* note 1, p. 107.

<sup>4</sup> H. Grotius, *Mare Liberum* (1608) (English translation by R. V. D. Magoffin, 1916).

<sup>5</sup> R. P. Anand, *Origin and Development of the Law of the Sea* (1983).

<sup>6</sup> Lapidoth, *supra* note 1, p. 264.

Isles. In 1609, King James I issued a proclamation under which foreigners who wished to fish within eyesight of the British coast, fixed at 14 miles, had to obtain a licence. Under the reign of Charles I and II, Britain asserted sovereignty over all the seas surrounding the British Isles.

During the rule of the Stuarts in Britain, numerous legal scholars sought to refute the Grotian thesis of *mare liberum*. The most important of these was John Selden who published in 1635, “Mare Clausum sive De Dominio Maris”. Ruth Lapidoth summarizes Selden’s thesis as follows:

“Selden maintains that the ancient law on the community of things has become modified in certain respects and that according to practice and custom, the sea was capable of appropriation. He cites many precedents from history to support this statement. Selden admits that to prohibit innocent navigation would be contrary to the dictates of humanity, but in his view the permitting of such innocent navigation does not derogate from the dominion of the sea — it is comparable to the free passage on a road across another’s land — and it cannot always be claimed as a right. With respect to the argument that the sea cannot be appropriated because of its physical properties, he points to the example of rivers, lakes and springs, which even by Roman law could be appropriated. It is not true that the sea had no banks or limits — it is clearly bounded by the shores, and limits may be set in the open sea by nautical science. Selden denies that the sea is inexhaustible, and he maintains that its usage — eg fishing, navigation, commerce and the extraction of pearls and corals and the like-by others, may diminish its abundance and prejudice its use by its owner.”<sup>7</sup>

The British claims to the seas around the British Isles were maintained, in whole or in part, through most of the seventeenth century. They were discontinued at the beginning of the eighteenth century when Britain achieved naval supremacy. *Mare liberum* was obviously more advantageous to her once she became the supreme naval power. Gradually, the balance tilted in favour of the doctrine of the freedom of the seas. However, as Lucius Caflisch has pointed out:

“The doctrine was not, of course, carried to its extreme logical conclusion, namely, that no part whatever of the sea is susceptible of being placed under coastal state jurisdiction. Such a conclusion would have been a practical absurdity, for states have a vital interest in the protection of their laws, their security and, possibly, their neutrality within a strip of the seas adjacent to their coasts.”<sup>8</sup>

#### A. *The Evolution of the Concept of the Territorial Sea*

According to Caflisch, the idea of a narrow belt of the sea placed under coastal state jurisdiction in matters of piracy and of offences committed in that area can be traced back to Bartolus (1314-1357), Baldus (1327-1400) and Jean Bodin (1530-1596). Alberto Gentili (1552-1608) was apparently the first scholar to use the expression “territorium” to describe the relationship between the coastal state and the sea adjacent to its coast. What was the nature of the coastal state’s jurisdiction in this belt of the sea? It was limited to matters of capture at sea and of neutrality.

<sup>7</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 266.

<sup>8</sup> L. Caflisch, “The Doctrine of “Mare Clausum” and the Third United Nations Conference on the Law of the Sea, in R. Blackhurst et. al., *International Relations in a Changing World* (Geneva: Graduate Institute of International Studies; Sijthoff, 1977), p. 201.

How broad a band of the sea off its coast could a state claim for this purpose? It was not originally conceived as a belt of uniform breadth following the coastline of a state. It existed only in those waters which fell under the range of guns effectively placed on the coast, the so-called canon-shot rule. The canon-shot rule had two defects. First, it was applicable only in those areas where guns had actually been emplaced on the coast. This meant that where there were no guns, the coastal state could make no claim. Secondly, the canon-shot rule did not produce territorial seas of uniform breadth because the range of canons varied greatly.

A second criterion was developed as a result of the practice of states such as Spain, England, Denmark and Norway. This was the line-of-sight rule. Under this rule, a coastal state could claim a band of the sea from its coast to as far as the human eye could see, within which, the coastal state could exercise powers to protect its security, to enforce its customs regulations and to protect the coastal population and its economic interests, for example, in fisheries. Like the canon-shot rule, the line-of-sight rule was imprecise and a coastal state could claim anything from three to twenty miles.

A third criterion emerged, largely as a result of the practice of the Scandinavians. According to Sayre A Swartztrauber,<sup>9</sup> Spain was the first country to apply the line-of-sight doctrine in 1565. The Dutch were the first to invoke the canon-shot rule in 1610. In the intervening period, the Danes instituted the use of an exactly fixed extent of territorial seas measured in marine leagues. The term "marine league" when used by Scandinavian publicists or by others referring to Scandinavian territorial waters, generally refers to a distance of four nautical miles. Otherwise, the term usually means three nautical miles. A Danish ordinance of 1598 ordered the seizure of any English ship hovering or fishing within two leagues of the coast. Thereafter, the Scandinavian states consistently measured their territorial sea boundaries in leagues. By the middle of the eighteenth century, the Scandinavians had evolved the common practice of claiming one marine league (four nautical miles) as the limit of their territorial seas, for the purpose of fishing as well as for neutrality.

The interesting story of how the three criteria, the canon-shot rule, the line-of-sight rule and the marine league rule gradually merged to become the three mile territorial sea has been recounted by Swartztrauber.<sup>10</sup> The first step was taken in 1761 by France when it equated the canon-shot rule with three miles. At that time, England and France were at war. A French privateer had seized two British ships off Jutland, in waters claimed by Denmark as her territorial seas. Denmark claimed one marine league or four nautical miles as the extent of her territorial seas. France recognized the canon-shot rule for the purpose of neutrality. The British complained on behalf of the owners of the two ships to the Dano-Norwegian Government. The latter, in turn, protested the seizures to the French. In the French memorial to the Danish government, France asserted that the seizures were legal and went on to state that it was prepared to depart from its previous position and recognize the Scandinavians' claim to a continuous belt of territorial sea provided it was three and not four miles.

---

<sup>9</sup> S. Swartztrauber, *The Three Mile Limit of Territorial Seas* (1972).

<sup>10</sup> *Ibid.*, pp. 51-63.

<sup>11</sup> English translation from Italian contained in Swartztrauber, *Ibid.*, p. 55.

The second step was the publication in 1782 of a monograph entitled “The Duties of Neutral Princes towards Belligerent Princes” by Abbe Ferdinando Galiani. He wrote:

“It would appear reasonable to me, however, that without waiting to see if the territorial sovereign actually erects some fortifications, and what calibre of guns he might mount therein, we should fix, finally, and all along the coast, the distance of 3 miles, as that which surely is the utmost range that a shell might be projected with hitherto known gun powder.”

The third step was the actions of the then newly independent, United States of America, in embracing the three-mile rule. In response to a French request to fix the limit of United States’ territorial sea, the then secretary of state, Thomas Jefferson, informed the British and the French on the 8th of November 1793 that the United States was provisionally fixing its territorial sea at three miles. This became formalised by an Act of Congress in 1794.<sup>12</sup> According to Swartrauber, the United States became the first state to incorporate the three-mile limit into its domestic laws.

Gradually, the three-mile territorial sea was incorporated into domestic laws, upheld by courts and advocated by publicists. The next important development occurred in 1818 when the three-mile rule was, for the first time, incorporated into a treaty between states. In the “Convention Respecting Fisheries, Boundary, and the Restoration of Slaves, October 20, 1818”, concluded between Britain and the United States, a key sentence read:

“And the United States hereby renounces, for ever, any liberty heretofore enjoyed or claimed by the inhabitants thereof to take, any, or cure fish on or within three marine miles of any of the coasts, bays, creeks, or harbours of His Britannic Majesty’s dominions in America.”<sup>13</sup>

In the course of the nineteenth century, the three-mile rule became almost universally accepted. Great Britain was its champion. It will be recalled that England, under Queen Elizabeth I, had challenged Spain’s claim to exclusive dominion over the Pacific Ocean and the Gulf of Mexico and Portugal’s claim to exclusive dominion over the Atlantic Ocean, south of Morocco, and the Indian Ocean. Under the reign of the Stuarts, the Scottish kings, the British pendulum had swung from *mare liberum* to *mare clausum*. At the beginning of the nineteenth century, with the defeat of Napoleon and the Congress of Vienna, Britain emerged as the world’s greatest power, on land as well as at sea. It was logical for Britain, as the world’s supreme naval power, to advocate the universal adoption of the three-mile territorial sea. As Lord Strang explained:

“In manufacture, in merchant marine, in foreign trade, in international finance, we had no rival...As we came, by deliberate act of policy, to adopt the practice of free trade and to apply the principle of ‘all seas freely open to all’, we moved towards Pax Britannica, using the Royal Navy to keep the seas open for the common benefit, to suppress piracy

<sup>12</sup> An act in addition to the act for the punishment of certain crimes against the United States, June 5, 1794, Ch. 50, 1 United States Statutes at Large, p. 384

<sup>13</sup> Convention with Great Britain of October 20, 1818, 8 United States Statutes at Large, p. 248.

and the slave trade, and to prepare and publish charts of every ocean."<sup>14</sup>

The three-mile territorial sea was accepted by all the great powers and most of the medium and small powers during the nineteenth century. There were, however, some exceptions to the general rule. The Scandinavians continued to claim a limit of one marine league or four nautical miles. Spain and Portugal claimed a limit of six miles. Mexico claimed a limit of nine miles. Uruguay claimed a limit of five miles.

### B. *Aftermath of First World War*

The First World War brought about important changes to the political geography of the world. The four defeated empires, Russian, Ottoman, Austro-Hungarian and German, were broken up and new nations were born. Finland, Latvia, Estonia, Lithuania, Poland, Arabia, Egypt, Yemen, Czechoslovakia and Yugoslavia became independent. A new international organisation, the League of Nations, was established. One of the tasks of the League was the codification of the law of nations. The Assembly of the League requested the Council to convene a committee of experts to determine those subjects of international law which should be considered for codification. In April 1925, the Council established the Committee of Experts for the Progressive Codification of International Law. The Committee selected eleven subjects for investigation and appointed a sub-committee to look into each subject. One of the eleven subjects was the territorial sea. The sub-committee on the territorial sea was chaired by Walter Schuckling of Germany and consisted of two other members, Barbosa de Magalhaes of Portugal and George W Wickersham of USA. The three members of the sub-committee were unable to agree. Wickersham was for the three-mile territorial sea. Schuckling favoured a six-mile territorial sea with a customs, sanitary zone beyond. Barbosa de Magalhaes proposed one single zone of twelve miles in order to satisfy all the needs of states.

The committee of Experts decided to send questionnaires on seven of the eleven subjects to various governments. Attached to the second questionnaire was a draft article which read as follows:

#### "Article 2

Extent of the rights of the riparian State. The zone of the coastal sea shall extend for three marine miles (60 to the degree of latitude) from low-water mark along the whole of the coast. Beyond the zone of sovereignty, states may exercise administrative rights on the ground either of custom or of vital necessity..."<sup>15</sup>

The dissenting views of Schuckling and de Magalhaes were appended to the questionnaire. In reply to the question whether the law of the territorial sea should be made the subject of an international convention, twenty-five states replied that a convention to codify the law of the territorial

<sup>14</sup> Lord W. Strang, *Britain in World Affairs* (1961), pp. 99-100, as quoted in Swaztrauber, *supra* note 9, pp. 64-65.

<sup>15</sup> League of Nations, Second Session of the Committee of Experts for the Progressive Codification of International Law, Official Records, (1926) 20 Amer. J. Int'l L. (Spec. Supp.), Report of the Sub-Committee on Territorial Waters, p. 141.; S. Rosenne, *Committee of Experts for the Progressive Development of International Law [1925-1928]* (2 Vols., Oceana, 1972), Vol. 2, p. 98.

waters would be possible and desirable. Only three states, France, Italy and Poland replied that the time was inopportune for such a convention. Spain objected to the questionnaire because the proposal was contrary to Spanish law. Austria and Switzerland abstained.<sup>16</sup>

On the question whether it is possible to establish by way of international agreement rules regarding the exploitation of the products of the sea, twenty-two states, including France, Italy and the US, favoured a convention. Six states, including the UK and Japan, replied in the negative. Austria and Switzerland again abstained.<sup>17</sup>

After examining the replies, the committee of Experts reported to the League's Council that seven subjects were ripe for codification. The League decided to convene conferences to examine three subjects, including the territorial sea, beginning in 1929. A Preparatory Committee was appointed to prepare detailed bases of discussion for the conferences. The Preparatory Committee drew up, *inter alia*, the following bases of discussion:

"Basis of Discussion No. 3

The breadth of the territorial waters under the sovereignty of the coastal state is three nautical miles...

Basis of Discussion No. 5

On the high seas adjacent to its territorial waters, the coastal state may exercise the control necessary to prevent, within its territory or territorial waters, the infringement of its customs or sanitary regulations or interference with its security by foreign ships.

Such control may not be exercised more than twelve miles from the coast."<sup>18</sup>

### C. *The Hague Codification Conference of 1930*

The Conference was held at the Hague in March 1930 and was attended by the representatives of forty-eight governments. The rules of procedure of the conference provided that drafts would be approved by a two-thirds majority of the delegates voting in the committee, although only a simple majority would be required in the plenary for final approval. The positions of the various delegations were as follows: ten states, South Africa, USA, Great Britain, Australia, Canada, China, Denmark, India, Japan and the Netherlands, favoured the three-mile limit. Two states, Greece and the Irish Free State, also supported the three-mile limit but they could accept a contiguous zone. Seven states, Germany, Belgium, Chile, Egypt, Estonia, France and Poland would support the three-mile territorial sea provided a contiguous zone was added. Three states, Iceland, Norway and Sweden, favoured a four-mile territorial sea. Finland also supported a four-mile territorial sea but wanted a contiguous zone as well. Six states, Brazil, Colombia, Italy, Romania, Uruguay and Yugoslavia favoured a six-mile territorial sea. Six others, Cuba, Spain, Latvia, Persia, Portugal and Turkey wanted a six-mile territorial sea together with a contiguous zone.

<sup>16</sup> Swartztrauber, *supra* note 9, p. 134.

<sup>17</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>18</sup> S. Rosenne, *League of Nations Conference for the Codification of International Law (1930)* (4 Vols., Oceana, 1970), Bases of Discussion II – Territorial Waters, Vol. 2, pp. 251-252, Document C.74.M.39.1929.V.

Because views were so divergent, no formal vote was taken on any of the proposals in the committee. A possible compromise consisting of a three-mile territorial sea and a nine-mile contiguous zone was squashed by strong British opposition. The conference therefore ended in failure. Swartztrauber has expressed the view that by allowing the conference to fail, "the great maritime powers ended their oligarchical maintenance of the maximum *mare liberum*. The Conference suggested to all that the great powers were no longer committed to enforcement of the three-mile limit. From 1930 on, the rule was subjected to increasing criticism, and its significance became diminished by the rapid development of the concept of the contiguous zone."<sup>19</sup>

#### D. *The Contiguous Zone*

What is the contiguous zone? The concept is that beyond the territorial sea, however limited, there would be a zone of the sea in which the coastal state would not have sovereignty but would exercise certain functional jurisdiction. Although the name, "contiguous zone", was not used until the Hague Conference of 1930, the idea had a long history. For example, in the early nineteenth century, Britain asserted customs jurisdiction to a distance of 300 miles from its shores.<sup>20</sup> The United States had always claimed exclusive customs jurisdiction inside a twelve-mile limit.<sup>21</sup>

In the 1930 Hague Codification Conference, it was proposed to create a contiguous zone beyond the territorial sea. In this zone, the coastal state would be empowered to prevent or punish infringements by foreign vessels, in its territorial sea, of the coastal state's regulations regarding customs, sanitation and national security.<sup>22</sup> Although the proposal was not adopted, due mainly to British opposition, the concept was increasingly reflected in the practice of states. Between 1930 and 1940, the following contiguous zone claims were made:<sup>23</sup>

State	Extent	Purpose of Claim	Means & Date of Implementation
China	12 miles	Customs	Customs Preventive Law of 19 June 1934
Colombia	20 kms	Customs	Customs Law of 19 June 1931
Cuba	5 miles	Sanitation	General Law on Fisheries of 28 March 1936
Czechoslovakia	12 miles	Anti-smuggling	Treaty with Finland, 21 March 1936

<sup>19</sup> Swartztrauber, *supra* note 9, p. 140.

<sup>20</sup> Act for the More Effectual Prevention of Smuggling, 12 July 1805, 45 Geo. III, c. 121, and the Act for the More Effectual Prevention of Smuggling, 13 August 1807, 47 Geo. III (Sess. 2), c. 66.

<sup>21</sup> Sec. 27 & 54, Act to Regulate the Collection of Duties on Imports and Tonnage, 2 March 1799, Ch. 22, 1 United States Statutes at Large 627 at 648 and 668; Sec. 581, Tariff Act of 1922, 21 September 1922, Ch. 356, 42 United States Statutes at Large 858 at 979.

<sup>22</sup> League of Nations Conference, *supra* note 18, Vol. II, p. 34.

<sup>23</sup> Swartztrauber, *supra* note 9, p. 148.

Denmark	12 miles	Anti-smuggling	Act No. 316 of 28 November 1935
Dominican Rep.	3 leagues	Naval security area	Law No. 55 of 27 December 1938
Ecuador	15 miles	Fishing	Decree No. 607 of 29 August 1934
El Salvador	12 miles	Police & Fishing	Law of Navigation and Marine of 23 October 1933
Finland	6 miles	Customs	Customs Regulation of 8 September 1939
France	20 kms	Fishing	Presidential Decree of September 1936
Guatemala	12 miles	Port authority jurisdiction	Regulations of 21 April 1939
Hungary	12 miles	Anti-smuggling	Treaty with Finland of 23 November 1932
Iran	12 miles	Marine supervision	Act of 19 July 1934
Italy	12 miles	Customs	Customs Law No. 1424 of 25 September 1940
Lebanon	20 kms	Customs	Order No. 137/LR of 15 June 1935
Norway	10 miles	Customs	Royal Resolution of 28 October 1932
Poland	12 miles	Customs	Customs Law of 27 October 1933
Syria	20 kms	Customs	Customs Code of 15 June 1935
Venezuela	12 miles	Security, customs, sanitation	Presidential Decree of 15 September 1939

#### E. *Developments After the Second World War*

After the second world war, the United States eclipsed Great Britain in both naval and land power. The burden of defending the principle of the freedom of the seas, in general, and the three-mile territorial sea, in particular, was therefore transferred from the British to the Americans. For over a hundred years, the British had single-handedly enforced the three-mile territorial sea by precept, by example and where necessary, by force. American policy was less consistent.

The point that unlike the British, American behaviour was less consistent and coherent is well brought out by what the United States did in 1945. In that year, President Truman issued two proclamations relating to the sea. In the first proclamation, the United States asserted its jurisdiction and con-

control over the natural resources of the subsoil and sea bed of the continental shelf contiguous to the United States coast.<sup>24</sup> The term “continental shelf” was described in an accompanying press release as generally extending to the point where the waters reached a depth of 600 feet or 200 metres isobath. In the second proclamation, the United States “regards it as proper to establish conservation zones in those areas of the high seas contiguous to the coasts of the United States wherein fishing activities have been or in the future may be developed and maintained on a substantial scale..”<sup>25</sup> The proclamation provided that the conservation zones would be established and maintained through agreement with those States whose subjects traditionally fished the areas in question.

The actions of United States were immediately emulated and exceeded by her regional neighbours. Mexico issued a similar proclamation one-month after the United States.<sup>26</sup> A year later, Argentina not only claimed sovereignty over her continental shelf but also to the water column above the shelf.<sup>27</sup> Between 1946 and 1957, ten other states claimed sovereignty over their continental shelves and the superjacent water.<sup>28</sup> Between 1947 and 1955, five Latin-American states: Chile,<sup>29</sup> Peru,<sup>30</sup> Costa Rica,<sup>31</sup> Ecuador,<sup>32</sup> and El Salvador<sup>33</sup> declared 200-mile limits for exclusive fishing rights. On the 19th of August, 1952, the representatives of Chile, Ecuador and Peru issued a joint declaration, the Santiago Declaration on the Maritime Zone. The declaration specified its purpose as the conservation and preservation “for their respective peoples, the natural riches of the zones of the sea which bathed their coasts.” In order to achieve this purpose, the three governments “proclaim as the standard of their international maritime policy, that to each one of them belongs the sovereignty and exclusive jurisdiction over the sea that washes their respective coasts, up to the minimum distance of two hundred nautical miles from the said coasts.”

Swartztrauber blamed the Truman proclamations for providing the basis for the Latin-American claims. He reasoned thus: “The Latin Americans had become concerned about the modern US fishing vessels seen off their coasts. Whether or not their concern was well-founded, they feared that their waters might be “overfished” by foreigners and they wished to extend their

---

<sup>24</sup> Proclamation No. 2667, “Policy of the United States With Respect to the Natural Resources of the Subsoil and Sea Bed of the Continental Shelf”, September 28, 1945, (1946) 40 Am. J. Int’l L. (Supp) 45; Whiteman, (1965) 4 Digest of International Law 756.

<sup>25</sup> Proclamation No. 2668, “Policy of the United States With Respect to Coastal Fisheries in Certain Areas of the High Seas”, September 28, 1945, (1946) 40 Am. J. Int’l L. (Supp.) 46; Whiteman, (1965) 4 Digest of International Law 956.

<sup>26</sup> Swartztrauber, *supra* note 9, pp. 162-165. This national legislation on law of the sea can be found in United Nations, *Laws and Regulations on the Regime of the High Seas*, Vol. 1 (1951) (UN Legislative Series, Document No. ST/LEG./SER.B/51v.2).

<sup>27</sup> “Decree No. 14708 concerning National Sovereignty over Epicontinental Sea and the Argentine Continental Shelf, 11 October 1946,” in United Nations, *Laws and Regulations on the High Seas*, pp. 4-5.

<sup>28</sup> Panama in 1946, Chile and Peru in 1947, Costa Rica in 1949, Nicaragua and El Salvador in 1950, South Korea in 1952 and Cambodia in 1957.

<sup>29</sup> Chilean Presidential Declaration of 23 June 1947.

<sup>30</sup> Peruvian Presidential Decree No. 781 of 1 August 1947.

<sup>31</sup> Costa Rican Regulation No. 363 of 11 January 1949 as amended by Decree No. 739 of 4 October 1949.

<sup>32</sup> Ecuadorian Decree No. 1085 of 14 May 1955.

<sup>33</sup> El Salvadorian Decree No. 1961 of 25 October 1955.

exclusive fishing boundaries to eliminate outside competition. But such a bold departure from customary law would require a suitable pretext; it was fortuitous for them that the Truman Proclamations came when they did.”<sup>34</sup>

Russia had, in 1927, claimed a twelve-mile territorial sea. This had reflected the fact that Russia had traditionally been a land power rather than a sea power. This was still true in the period immediately after the second world war when the Soviet navy was relatively small. During this period, the Soviet objective was to keep the ships and aircraft of her adversaries as far from her coasts as possible. The Soviet Union’s Warsaw Pact Allies followed her lead by declaring twelve-mile territorial sea.<sup>35</sup>

Many new states were born between 1945 and 1960, as a result of the dissolution of the British, Dutch and French colonial empires. One of the questions which each new state had to consider was the extent of its territorial sea. Some opted for the three-mile rule but most have claimed territorial seas of more than three miles, especially twelve miles.

#### F. *First UN Conference on the Law of the Sea*

At the end of the Second World War, a new international organisation, the United Nations, was created to take the place of the League of Nations. One of the purposes of the UN is to encourage the progressive development of international law and its codification. Pursuant to this purpose, the General Assembly of the UN established the International Law Commission. The Commission is mandated to select topics of international law for codification. The Commission began its work in 1949 and chose fourteen topics including “the high seas” and “territorial waters”. In 1954, the Commission submitted to the General Assembly provisional articles concerning the regime of the territorial sea. Article 3, on the breadth of the territorial sea was, however, left blank.<sup>36</sup> The General Assembly, in turn, circulated the draft articles to member governments and asked for their comments. Only eighteen replies were received. Three states, US, UK and the Netherlands favoured three miles; one state, Sweden, favoured four miles; four states, Egypt, Haiti, South Africa and Yugoslavia favoured six miles; one state, Mexico, favoured nine miles; one state, India, favoured twelve miles; El Salvador favoured 200 miles; Philippines favoured the archipelagic principle and six others, Australia, Belgium, Brazil, Iceland, Norway and Thailand reserved their positions.<sup>37</sup>

In 1955, the International Law Commission again submitted draft articles to the General Assembly and requested the views of member states. This time, article 3 was not left blank. It read:

“Article 3

Breadth of the territorial sea

1. The Commission recognises that international practice is not uniform as regards the traditional limitation of the territorial sea to three miles.
2. The Commission considers that international law does not justify an extension of the territorial sea beyond twelve miles.

<sup>34</sup> Swartztrauber, *supra* note 9, p. 169.

<sup>35</sup> *Ibid.*, pp. 169-174.

<sup>36</sup> [1954] 2 Y.B. Int’l L. Comm. 153-162.

<sup>37</sup> [1955] 2 Y.B. Int’l L. Comm. 19-41.

3. The Commission, without taking any decisions as to the breadth of the territorial sea within that limit, considers that international law does not require states to recognise a breadth beyond three miles.”<sup>38</sup>

Twenty-five replies were received but most of the replies were non-committal. The Commission took the replies into account in drawing up a draft convention which was submitted to the General Assembly in 1956. Article 3 was revised to read:

“Breadth’ of the territorial sea

Article 3

1. The Commission recognises that international practice is not uniform as regards the delimitation of the territorial sea.
2. The Commission considers that international law does not permit an extension of the territorial sea beyond twelve miles.
3. The Commission without taking any decision as to the breadth the territorial sea within that limit notes, on the one hand, that many states have fixed a breadth greater than three miles, and on the other hand, that many states do not recognise such a breadth when that of their own territorial sea is less.
4. The Commission considers that the breath of the territorial sea should be fixed by an international conference.”<sup>39</sup>

The General Assembly decided in 1957 to convene a conference of plenipotentiaries to consider the draft convention prepared by the Commission.<sup>40</sup> The First UN Conference on the Law of the Sea opened in February, 1958, in Geneva. The Conference was confronted with a plethora of proposals on the limit of the territorial sea, ranging from three to 200 miles. The United States initially proposed a three-mile limit with an exclusive fishing zone out to twelve miles.<sup>41</sup> Ceylon, Italy, and Sweden<sup>42</sup> proposed six miles. Variations of the twelve-mile limit were proposed by Colombia, USSR, India, Mexico, Burma, Indonesia, Morocco, Saudi Arabia, Egypt and Venezuela.<sup>43</sup> Realising the futility of pressing the three-mile limit, the US and UK attempted to reach a compromise at six miles. The British proposed a six-mile limit with a right of innocent passage for aircraft and vessels, including warships, between three and six miles.<sup>44</sup> The US proposed a territorial sea of six miles and exclusive fishing rights for another six miles, with the proviso that foreign states whose nationals had traditionally fished those coastal waters (for at least five years) could continue

<sup>38</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 35.

<sup>39</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 256.

<sup>40</sup> G.A. Res. 1105 of 21 February 1957, U.N. Gen. Ass. Off. Rec., 11th Sess., (1957) Supp. No. 17, p. 156. (A/3572)

<sup>41</sup> First United Nations Conference on the Law of the Sea, Off. Rec., (1958), United States proposal, Vol. III, p. 249, Document A/CONF.13/C.1/L.140 of 1 April 1958.

<sup>42</sup> *Ibid.*, Ceylon proposal, Vol. III, p. 244, Document A/CONF.13/C.1/L.118 of 1 April 1958; Italy proposal, Vol. III p. 248, Document A/CONF.13/C.1/L.137 of 1 April 1958; Sweden proposal, Vol. III, p. 212, Document A/CONF.13/C.1/L.4 of 10 March 1958.

<sup>43</sup> *Ibid.*, Colombia proposal, Vol. III, p. 233, Document A/CONF.13/C.1/L.82 and Corr. 1 of 31 March 1958; USSR proposal, Vol. III, p. 233, Document A/CONF.13/C.1/L.80 of 31 March 1958; India and Mexico proposal, Vol. III, p. 233, Document A/CONF.13/C.1/L.79 of 29 March 1958; Burma, Columbia, Indonesia, Mexico, Morocco, Saudi Arabia, United Arab Republic and Venezuela proposal, Vol. II, P. 128, Document A/CONF.13/C.1/L.34 of 25 April 1958.

to do so in the outer six-mile belt.<sup>45</sup> None of the proposals obtained the necessary two-thirds majority vote.

Unlike the Hague Codification Conference of 1930, which ended without any achievement, the First UN Conference on the Law of the Sea of 1958 adopted four conventions: the Convention on the Territorial Sea and the Contiguous Zone,<sup>46</sup> the Convention on Fishing and Conservation of the Living Resources of the High Seas,<sup>47</sup> the Convention on the High Seas<sup>48</sup> and the Convention on the Continental Shelf.<sup>49</sup> Although the Convention on the Territorial Sea and the Contiguous Zone did not contain an agreed limit on the maximum permissible breadth of the territorial sea, it did contain a comprehensive codification of the rules concerning the right of innocent passage.<sup>50</sup> It also contained an agreed article on the contiguous zone.<sup>51</sup>

The Convention on Fishing and Conservation of the Living Resources of the High Seas did not contain an agreed limit on the coastal state's exclusive fishing rights. The Convention prescribed that conservation programmes should be undertaken on a multilateral basis and should extend over the whole of the fishery. It did permit unilateral conservation action in cases where negotiations were unsuccessful and provided for the settlement of conservation disputes by a special commission.

The Convention on the Continental Shelf provided for the exploitation of the natural resources of the seabed and subsoil and the sedentary species on the seabed beyond the territorial sea... "to a depth of 200 metres or, beyond that limit, to where the depth of the superjacent waters admits of the exploitation of the natural resources."<sup>52</sup> Article 3 of the Convention ruled out any claims of sovereignty over the shelf's superjacent waters or air space.

### G. *Second UN Conference on the Law of the Sea*

Before the 1958 Conference adjourned, it adopted a resolution requesting the General Assembly to study the possibility of calling a second conference to consider the questions left unsettled, i.e. the limits of the territorial sea and fishing zone.<sup>53</sup> The General Assembly decided in 1958 to call a second conference in 1960.<sup>54</sup>

The second UN Conference on the Law of the Sea opened in Geneva in March, 1960. The Soviet Union introduced an optional three to twelve-mile limit combined with exclusive fishing rights to twelve miles. Mexico

<sup>44</sup> *Ibid.*, United Kingdom revised proposal, Vol. III, pp. 247-248, Document A/CONF.13/C.1/L.134 of 1 April 1958.

<sup>45</sup> *Ibid.*, United States revised proposal, Vol. III, pp. 253-254, Document A/CONF.13/C.1/L.159/Rev. 2 of 19 April 1958.

<sup>46</sup> *Ibid.*, Vol. II, pp. 132, Document A/CONF.13/L.52; 516 U.N.T.S. 205.

<sup>47</sup> *Ibid.*, Vol. II, pp. 135-139, Document A/CONF.13/L.53; 559 U.N.T.S. 285.

<sup>48</sup> *Ibid.*, Vol. II, pp. 139-141, Document A/CONF.13/L.54; 450 U.N.T.S. 11.

<sup>49</sup> *Ibid.*, Vol. II, pp. 142-143, Document A/CONF.13/L.55; 499 U.N.T.S. 311.

<sup>50</sup> Convention on the Territorial Sea and Contiguous Zone, *supra* note 47A, Articles 16-23.

<sup>51</sup> *Ibid.*, Article 24

<sup>52</sup> Convention on the Continental Shelf, *supra* note 47D, Article 1.

<sup>53</sup> First United Nations Conference on the Law of the Sea, Off.Rec. (1958) Resolutions adopted by the Conference, Resolution VIII, Vol. I, p. 145.

<sup>54</sup> G.A. Res. 1307 of 10 December 1958, U.N. Gen.Ass.Off.Rec., 13th Sess. (1958) Supp. No. 18, p. 148.

proposed an optional three-to twelve-mile territorial sea combined with a sliding scale fishery limit. The idea was that if a state chose a narrow territorial sea, it would be rewarded with a greater exclusive fishing zone. The contest at the Conference was between a proposal submitted by eighteen developing countries<sup>55</sup> and a proposal jointly submitted by Canada and USA.<sup>56</sup> The eighteen-power proposal contained two points. First, every state is entitled to fix the breadth of its territorial sea up to a limit of twelve miles. Second, when the breadth of the territorial sea is less than twelve miles, a state is entitled to establish a fishing zone up to a limit of twelve miles. This proposal was rejected by 39 votes to 36 votes with 13 abstentions.

The joint Canada-US proposal contained three points. First, a state is entitled to fix the breadth of its territorial sea up to a maximum of six miles. Second, a state is entitled to establish a fishing zone contiguous to its territorial sea extending to a maximum limit of twelve miles. Third, any state whose vessels have made a practice of fishing in the outer six miles of the fishing zone for five years may continue to do so for ten years. This proposal was adopted at the committee level of the conference by a vote of 43 to 33 with 12 abstentions. Under the rules of procedure of the conference, substantive decisions required a two-thirds majority of the representatives present and voting in the plenary of the Conference. In order to gain the additional support needed, Canada and USA accepted an amendment proposed by Brazil, Cuba and Uruguay which provided that:

“the coastal state has the faculty of claiming preferential fishing rights in any area of the high seas adjacent to its exclusive fishing zone when it is scientifically established that a special situation or condition makes the exploitation of the living resources of the high seas in that area of fundamental importance to the economic development of the coastal state or the feeding of its population.”<sup>57</sup>

When the joint Canada-US proposal, as amended, was put to the vote in the plenary it received 54 votes in favour, 28 against with 5 abstentions, one vote short of the required majority. According to the leader of the US delegation, Arthur Dean,<sup>58</sup> the failure was due to a last-minute withdrawal of support by Chile, Ecuador and Japan. Thus, for the third time in thirty years, the representatives of the international community had been unable to agree on the maximum permissible breadth of the territorial sea.

## II. THE DEATH OF THE OLD LEGAL ORDER

What led to the breakdown of the old legal order governing the seas? The old legal order collapsed under the weight of three causes: first, the progress of technology; second, the failure of the traditional law to deal adequately with the concerns of coastal states regarding the utilisation of oceanic resources; and third, the emergence of the developing countries.

The combination of a narrow territorial sea and the freedom to fish in the high sea served the interests of the world community as long as there

<sup>55</sup> Second United Nations Conference on the Law of the Sea, Off.Rec. (1960) pp. 165-166, Document A/CONF.19/C.1/L.2/Rev.1 of 11 April 1960.

<sup>56</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 169, Document A/CONF.19/C.1/L.10 of 8 April 1960.

<sup>57</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 173, Document A/CONF.19/L.12 of 22 April 1960.

<sup>58</sup> A. Dean, “The Second Geneva Conference on the Law of the Sea: The Fight for Freedom of the Seas”, (1960) 54 *Amer. J. Int'l L.* 751.

were plenty of fish for all. The progress in ship-building technology and fishing gear technology and in electronics produced factory fishing vessels and vessels equipped with electronic tracking gear. This had, in turn, led to over-fishing and to the depletion of certain fish stocks. The possession of such advanced technology by a few distant-water fishing states had naturally led the developing coastal states, dependent on coastal fisheries, to perceive the situation as being inequitable. Developing coastal states, which depend upon coastal fisheries for their economic survival and welfare, claim that they have a greater equity to such resources than the developed distant-water fishing states.

The statistics showing the impact of technology on the harvest of fish are revealing. In 1950, the world harvested a total of 16 million tonnes of fish. In 1979, the world's harvest of fish had increased to 71 million tonnes.

Progress in the field of ship-building technology had also had an impact on navigation and on the marine environment. The very large crude carriers or super-tankers, nuclear-powered and nuclear-armed submarines are some examples of recent ship-building technology. There has been a vast increase in both the number and tonnage of vessels. In 1950, the world merchant tonnage was 76 million tonnes. By 1974, it had increased to 306 million tonnes. This vast increase had posed serious problems of congestion and navigational safety in important shipping lines.

The progress of technology has also led to new uses of the ocean. The exploitation of oil and gas in the continental shelf, at progressively greater depths, is such an example. Another is the development of technology to mine the polymetallic nodules which lie on the deep seabed and ocean floor between 3,000 to 5,000 metres of water.

In the period since 1945, especially in the decades of the fifties and sixties, most of the colonial empires were liquidated and a great number of the former colonies acceded to independence. The developing countries generally felt that they had no part in the moulding of the traditional law and that it did not serve their interests. They, therefore, demanded that the traditional law of the sea should be remoulded in order to take their interests into account. A member of the small and middle-sized developed coastal states such as Canada, Norway, Australia, New Zealand, Iceland sought common cause with the developing coastal states. This coalition of forces brought about a historic movement for the expansion of the jurisdiction and resource rights of coastal states which one American expert on the law of the sea, Leigh Ratiner, has described as a "revolution".

Why didn't the major maritime powers oppose the expansionism of the coastal states? Why were the great maritime powers reluctant to use force in order to check the unilateral claims of the coastal states?

Initially, the great maritime powers of the West protested, by diplomatic means, all unilateral claims by coastal states. When these diplomatic protests failed to stem the tide of coastal states expansion, the great powers did not resort to force to check the tide. For example, the United Kingdom did not use its superior fire-power against Iceland during the famous cod

war.<sup>59</sup> The United States did not send its navy to protect its tuna boats against seizure by Chile, Ecuador and Peru. Why didn't they do so?

They did not do so for four reasons. First, the United States had itself been the first to make a unilateral claim in 1945 to the resources of the continental shelf. Its moral authority was therefore not impeccable. Secondly, most of the coastal states which had made unilateral claims were friends and allies of the great powers. Iceland and the United Kingdom are members of NATO. Chile, Ecuador, Peru and United States are members of the Organisation of American States. It is easier to use military force against an adversary than against a country which is an ally or friend. The use of force by a great power against an ally or friend would have serious repercussions on its alliance interests and its foreign policy. Thirdly, the use of force is arguably unlawful under the United Nations' Charter and is, in any case, impolitic. Great powers would be condemned by world public opinion for bullying small or militarily weak coastal states irrespective of the merit or demerit of the unilateral claims of the coastal states. Fourthly, the developing states were often perceived to be claiming the resources of the sea in order to feed their hungry peoples and to augment their developing economies.

By the mid-1960's, the great powers and the coastal states both felt a need for a new legal order for the oceans. The four Geneva Conventions of 1958 had been ratified by very few states and were being rapidly overtaken by state practice.<sup>60</sup> The great powers needed "a new consensus regarding the rules of ocean law that is compatible with the mobility, flexibility and credibility of a routine global deployment of forces." The coastal states wanted a new legal order to ratify the unilateral claims which they have made for oceanic jurisdiction, oceanic resources, for the protection of the marine environment, and for their security. The opportunity to build a new consensus on oceanic law was first presented in 1967 when the then Ambassador of Malta to the United Nations, Dr Arvid Pardo, drew the attention of the world to the immense resources of the seabed and ocean floor, beyond the limits of national jurisdiction and proposed that such resources be considered the common heritage of mankind.<sup>61</sup>

The coastal states immediately saw the advantage of broadening Dr Pardo's proposal to include all aspects of the uses and resources of the sea.

<sup>59</sup> In 1958, Iceland extended its fishing limit to 12 miles together with a set of 47 baselines surrounding the entire country and its fringe islands. British fishermen were the foreigners most affected, having fished those waters up to the four-mile limit since 1836. As a result, there began the Anglo-Icelandic Fish War of eighteen and a half months during which British trawlers fished in groups under the protection of the British navy. In March, 1960, the British declared a three month truce and withdrew its forces in order not to spoil the atmosphere of the Second United Nations Conference on the Law of the Sea. The Conference failed to agree on the limit of a coastal state's exclusive fishing right but the British in practice observed the Icelandic claim. Another dispute arose in 1971 following Iceland's notice of its intention to claim a 50 mile exclusive fishing zone.

<sup>60</sup> The Convention on the Territorial Sea and Contiguous Zones, *supra* note 46, came into force on 10 September 1964 and has 46 parties as of 31 December 1985. The Convention on the High Seas, *supra* note 48, came into force on 30 September 1962 and has 57 parties as of 31 December 1985. The Convention on Fishing and Conservation of the Living Resources of the High Seas, *supra* note 47, came into force on 20 March 1966 and has 36 parties as of 31 December 1985. The Convention on the Continental Shelf, *supra* note 49, came into force on 10 June 1964 and has 54 parties as of 31 December 1985. United Nations, *Multilateral Treaties Deposited with the Secretary-General*, Status as of 31 December 1985 (1986).

<sup>61</sup> U.N. Gen.Ass.Off.Rec., 22nd Sess. (1967) First Committee, 1515th and 1516th meetings on 1st November 1967.

Their basic thought was that trade-offs could be made between the demand of the great powers for navigational and overflight rights and the demand of the coastal states for expanded resource rights.

In 1967, the Soviet Union approached the United States and other countries on the idea of recognising a twelve-mile territorial sea provided that a high seas corridor was preserved in international straits. In 1968 and 1969, the United States started sounding out the views of some NATO countries, the Soviet Union and others, on the idea of conceding twelve miles as the maximum permissible breadth of the territorial sea in return for free navigation of warship and overflight of military aircraft in straits used for international navigation.

The confluence of these three streams of thought led, in 1970, to the decision to convene the Third United Nations Conference on the Law of the Sea in December, 1973.<sup>62</sup> The conference would attempt to reach agreement on the two questions left unresolved by the Hague Codification Conference of 1930 and the First and Second UN Conferences on the Law of the Sea, ie the limits of the territorial sea and exclusive fishing right. In addition, the Conference would attempt a more precise definition of the continental shelf than the definition in the 1958 Convention on the Continental Shelf. The Conference would also deal with the contiguous zone, straits used for international navigation, archipelagos, resources of the high seas, the protection and preservation of the marine environment from pollution, marine scientific research and the regime and institutions for the exploration and exploitation of the resources of the international area of the seabed and ocean floor. In accordance with the exhortation of Dr Arvid Pardo, the Conference would attempt to deal with the various subjects and issues as forming an integral whole and recognise that ocean space forms an ecological unity.

TOMMY T. B. KOH\*

---

<sup>62</sup> G.A. Res. 2650C of 17 December 1970, UN Gen.Ass.Off.Rec., 25th Sess. (1970) Supp. No. 28, p. 242.

\* LL.B. (Malaya), LL.M. (Harv.), Dip. Crim. (Cantab.), LL.D. (Yale) (Honoris Causa), Advocate & Solicitor (Singapore); Ambassador to the United States of America; President of the Third United Nations Conference on The Law of the Sea from 1981 to 1984.



### **Annex 809**

United Nations Environment Programme, Coordinating Body on the Seas of East Asia, *Action Plan for the Protection and Sustainable Development of the Marine and Coastal Areas of the East Asian Region*, U.N. Doc. UNEP(OCA)/EAS IG5/6, Annex IV (1994)



ANNEX IV

ACTION PLAN FOR THE PROTECTION AND SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT  
OF THE MARINE AND COASTAL AREAS OF  
THE EAST ASIAN REGION

## PREFACE

During the United Nations Conference on the Human Environment (Stockholm, 5-16 June 1972), the Action Plan for the Human Environment, including the General Principles for Assessment and Control of Marine Pollution was adopted. In the light of the results of the Stockholm Conference, the United Nations General Assembly decided to establish the United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP) to "serve as a focal point for environmental action and coordination within the United Nations system" (General Assembly resolution (XXVII) of 15 December 1972). The organizations of the United Nations system were invited "to adopt the measures that may be required to undertake concerted and coordinated programmes with regard to international environmental problems", and the intergovernmental and non-governmental organizations that have an interest in the field of the environment were also invited "to lend their full support and collaboration to the United Nations with a view to achieving the largest possible degree of cooperation and coordination". Subsequently, the Governing Council of UNEP chose "Oceans" as one of the priority areas in which it would focus efforts to fulfil its catalytic and coordinating role.

The Regional Seas Programme was initiated by UNEP in 1974. Since then the Governing Council of UNEP has repeatedly endorsed a regional approach to the control of marine pollution and the management of marine and coastal resources and has requested the development of regional action plans. More recently, Chapter 17 of Agenda 21 of the United Nations Conference on Environment and Development (UNCED) as adopted by the Plenary in Rio de Janeiro on 14 June 1992 reaffirmed the need to strengthen, and extend, where necessary, intergovernmental regional cooperation, citing in particular the Regional Seas Programme of UNEP (paragraph 17.120).

The Regional Seas Programme at present includes thirteen regions<sup>1</sup> and has nearly 140 States participating in it. It is conceived as an action-oriented programme having concern not only for the consequences but also for the causes of environmental degradation, and encompassing a comprehensive approach to combating environmental problems through the management of marine and coastal areas. Each regional action plan is formulated according to the needs of the region as perceived by the Governments concerned. It is designed to link assessment of the quality of the marine environment and the causes of its deterioration with activities for the management and development of the marine and coastal environment. The action plans promote the parallel development of regional legal agreements and of action-oriented programme activities<sup>2</sup>.

On the initiative of the States of the East Asian region, the Governing Council of UNEP in 1977 decided that "steps are urgently needed to formulate and establish a scientific programme involving research, prevention and control of marine pollution and monitoring" for a regional action plan in East Asia (Decision 88 (v)).

---

<sup>1</sup> Mediterranean, Kuwait Action Plan Region, Black Sea, West and Central Africa, Wider Caribbean, East Asian Seas, South Asian Seas, South-East Pacific, South-West Pacific, North-West Pacific, Red Sea and Gulf of Aden, East Africa and South-West Atlantic.

<sup>2</sup> UNEP: Achievements and planned development of UNEP's Regional Seas Programme and comparable programmes sponsored by other bodies. UNEP Regional Seas Reports and Studies No.1 UNEP, 1982.

UNEP(OCA)/EAS IG.5/6

Annex IV

Page ii

As part of the preparatory activities for the formulation of the regional action plan, a large number of surveys, reviews, studies and meetings were prepared and convened on the initiative of UNEP, other United Nations agencies and the States of the region. In early 1979 an exploratory mission assessed the feasibility of the action plan for East Asia and the first draft of the plan was prepared by UNEP.

The draft of the action plan was reviewed and refined by two meetings of experts designated by the States of the region (Baguio, June 1980 and Bangkok, December 1980).

The Intergovernmental Meeting on the Protection and Development of the Marine Environment and Coastal Areas of the East Asian Region (Manila, 27-29 April 1981), attended by representatives of Indonesia, Malaysia, the Philippines, Singapore and Thailand, adopted the Action Plan for the Protection and Development of the Marine Environment and Coastal Areas of the East Asian Region (UNEP/IG.26/6, Annex IV).

The subsequent Intergovernmental Meeting on the East Asian Seas Action Plan (Bangkok, 9-11 December 1981), attended by the representatives of the same States, determined the institutional and financial arrangements for the implementation of the Action Plan (UNEP/IG.31/6, paragraphs 36-57) including the terms of reference for the management of the East Asian Seas Trust Fund (UNEP/IG.31/6, Annex VII).

A decision to revise the East Asian Seas Action Plan arose at the 10th meeting of the Coordinating Body on the Seas of East Asia (COBSEA) held in Bangkok, Thailand on 9-10 July 1993. Such a step was to be undertaken in line with the revision of the Long-Term Strategy of COBSEA which had to take into consideration Chapter 17 of Agenda 21, and all recent national and regional developments concerning the East Asian Seas (UNEP(OCA)/EAS IG.4/7, paragraph 58). The two major factors guiding such a revision were the expansion of COBSEA to include the wider East Asian Seas region, and the need for the Long-Term Strategy to be "problem-oriented and management-driven" and integrated in approach, with the "ultimate goal of an actual and real improvement in coastal and marine environmental quality" (UNEP(OCA)/EAS IG.4/7, Annex V).

It was envisaged that participation to COBSEA be extended to include all countries bordering the East Asian Seas. In view of this, countries not initially participating in COBSEA have already attended the more recent intergovernmental COBSEA meetings as observers.

CONTENTS

PREFACE

ACTION PLAN FOR THE PROTECTION AND SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT OF THE  
MARINE AND COASTAL AREAS OF THE EAST ASIAN REGION

- I INTRODUCTION
- II SCIENTIFIC ACTIVITIES LEADING TOWARDS MANAGEMENT
- III ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT
- IV IMPLEMENTATION OF THE EAST ASIAN SEAS ACTION PLAN
- V INSTITUTIONAL ARRANGEMENT
- VI FINANCIAL ARRANGEMENTS

*ANNEXES*

- ANNEX I.* COMMUNICATION LINKS ON POLICY MATTERS
- ANNEX II.* COMMUNICATION LINKS ON TECHNICAL MATTERS
- ANNEX III.* NATIONAL FOCAL POINTS OF THE ACTION PLAN
- ANNEX IV.* LEVEL OF PLEDGES OF THE PARTICIPATING STATES TO THE EAST  
ASIAN SEAS TRUST FUND
- ANNEX V.* TERM OF REFERENCE FOR THE MANAGEMENT OF THE EAST ASIAN  
SEAS TRUST FUND

ACTION PLAN FOR THE PROTECTION AND SUSTAINABLE  
DEVELOPMENT OF  
THE MARINE ENVIRONMENT AND COASTAL AREAS  
OF THE EAST ASIAN REGION

I. INTRODUCTION

II. SCIENTIFIC ACTIVITIES LEADING TOWARDS MANAGEMENT

1. In the light of the historical development of the East Asian Seas Action Plan, the relevant past and recent events within the East Asian Seas region, the emergence of new issues in marine and coastal environmental protection, including the formulation of Agenda 21 (particularly Chapter 17), and the nature of marine and coastal environmental problems besetting the region which require specific and decisive management action, the following are proposed as the main scientific activities to be given priority in the action plan in the coming decade.

2. An integrated and interdisciplinary approach to the study of marine and coastal ecosystems listed below is envisaged. To this end, and to the extent feasible, participating States will identify and designate pilot areas for the coordinated implementation of the activities listed below.

3. The programme components listed below are interdisciplinary and interrelated. Therefore, while preparing the operational details of each programme component, due attention should be paid to close coordination among these activities.

Development of a regional database

4. Since the inception of the action plan, activities arising from it, together with related programmes carried out in the region, have resulted in the following accomplishments:

- 4.1 Baseline information on the structure, distribution and dynamics of major marine ecosystems (e.g. coral reefs, mangroves, seagrass beds, soft bottoms) situated in the different countries;
- 4.2 Information on levels and trends in the distribution of important non-oil pollutants originating from land-based and offshore sources;
- 4.3 Information on levels and trends in the distribution of oil pollutants, from both land-based and offshore sources (including shipping);
- 4.4 Directories of scientific institutions, research centres, information centres and data sources in the region; and
- 4.5 Bibliographies of publications on relevant marine environmental issues in the region.

5. A regularly updated database should integrate all this information into a compatible format including risk assessment estimates readily assessable to and usable through electronic networking by policy/decision makers, managers and other scientists.

UNEP(OCA)/EAS IG.5/6

Annex IV

Page 2

6. A database on the status and distribution of marine ecosystems and their associated species has been developed by the ASEAN-Australia Economic Cooperation Programme (AAECP) Marine Science Project: Living Coastal Resources. A new phase of AAECP aims at establishing national decision-support systems by integrating different databases relevant to the coastal and marine environment. An important activity of the action plan would be to build on and expand these valuable databases to incorporate all information generated pertaining to the East Asian Seas. This will provide decision makers with a sound basis for the management and protection of the marine and coastal environment on a regional basis.

#### Long-term monitoring and environmental assessment

7. It is imperative that monitoring programmes already underway, covering both the status of ecosystems and levels and trends in distribution of pollutants, be continued within the framework of the action plan. In addition, efforts should be made to identify gaps in information which would require the establishment of expanded or additional monitoring programmes. The vital importance of long-term monitoring to help ensure effective management is stressed in many parts of Chapter 17 of Agenda 21. Long-term monitoring is also an essential feature of efforts to anticipate and mitigate the adverse effects of global change.

8. In order to keep abreast of international efforts to cope with global change, the action plan should incorporate elements relating to the immediate effects of resource use as well as the longer-term effects of the climate change. With regards to use, these would include data on the existing and projected levels of use and socio-economic demand. With respect to climate change, these would include the effects of possible sea level change, incidents of extreme climatic events, and the role of oceans as the sink and regulator of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere. In addition, the increasing amounts of ultraviolet radiation that penetrate the atmosphere due to the depletion of ozone layer which in turn would adversely affect both terrestrial and marine communities.

#### Scientific aspects of rehabilitation of vital ecosystems and restoration of ecologically or economically important species and communities

9. Such action would be in line with the global call to conserve biodiversity through the Biodiversity Convention. It also directly addresses the need to maintain the livelihood and resource base of human populations of the region which are dependent on the seas, directly or indirectly. Consideration should be given to the development of cooperative regional approaches for the effective conservation and management of migratory marine species, particularly among the range countries.

10. Scientific research which seeks to create a sound basis for the rehabilitation of critical ecosystems should be encouraged and supported. The rehabilitated ecosystems will generate a wide range of benefits, including food, products used in shelter and industry, recreation, and physical protection from natural hazards. They also serve as habitats for commercially and ecologically important species. Under such an activity, research into basic ecological processes such as productivity and factors which structure communities is indispensable.

11. Studies should be conducted on the biology and ecology of important species that are threatened with significant depletion in numbers or with extinction. The scientific results thus produced would be used for the purpose of guiding efforts to restore species or ecologically important functional groups to their normal levels in their natural habitats, or to introduce them in convenient locations for sustainable exploitation (as in mariculture and sea-ranching).

#### Scientific aspects of marine protected areas

12. Marine protected areas play a critical role in the conservation of biodiversity. The scientific basis for this should be examined, for example, the function of marine protected areas as refuge or as replenishment sources for endangered species. The marine protected areas will also provide an opportunity for the studies on reintroduction of species into their natural habitats from which, due to various environmental pressures, they were displaced or forced out. Relevant questions also concern the minimum size or the extent of such areas, and the corridors which connect them to similar reserves elsewhere in order to form a viable network for the preservation of critical habitats or species.

#### Utilization and protection of marine resources

13. Scientific research which establishes a better understanding of the relationship between protection and utilization of marine resources and their environment would contribute to management for sustainable use and development of the region and should be encouraged and supported.

#### Quality assurance for pollution monitoring

14. This activity would be of primary importance in the region because of the need to ensure that data gathered on the types and levels of pollution in the marine environment are updated to meet appropriate standards for quality and inter-comparability.

15. The component on quality assurance for pollution monitoring is to be strengthened through an intensive programme of training and technical support of local scientists and technicians, including (UNEP/IG.26/6, Annex IV, paragraph 17):

- 15.1 Standardization of analytical techniques for measuring pollutant concentration, and of techniques used to measure the effects of pollutants on human health, fishery resources and marine and coastal ecosystems;
- 15.2 Introduction of quality control of analytical procedures within and among the laboratories participating in the action plan, including the conduct of regional intercalibration exercises on a regular basis to ensure intercomparability;
- 15.3 Assistance to the laboratories in the field of instrumental analysis through the establishment of a joint regional equipment service;
- 15.4 Training of scientists and technicians through existing national, regional and international institutions ready to offer their facilities; and
- 15.5 Updating and developing compatible methodology for the handling, validation and regional evaluation of data collected through the above research projects.

#### Biological and ecological effects of pollution

16. The most significant effect on marine biodiversity is land-based sources of pollution and human activities. In order to develop proper management measures to combat the adverse impacts of pollution, effects at all relevant levels of the ecological hierarchy must be understood. Pollutants always exert action first at the molecular and cellular levels. Processes that are triggered

UNEP(OCA)/EAS IG.5/6  
Annex IV  
Page 4

on these scales then build up to be manifested at higher levels, such as in the form of pathological reactions in individual organisms. Deleterious consequences may make their way up the ecological hierarchy to entire populations or even communities.

#### Development and application of technologies to prevent and control pollution and its effects

17. This activity would be of major importance to the region through identifying and updating methodologies for reducing pollution at source for providing effective and rapid response to pollution emergencies and to effects including red tides.

### III. ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT

18. It is expected that data produced by scientific activities described in the above paragraphs will have direct utility for programmes designed to protect and properly manage the marine and coastal environment of the East Asian Seas region. They also will promote the utilization of resources on a sustainable basis and enhance awareness of the requirements and basis for sustainability.

19. Integrated management efforts shall draw on the spirit of Chapter 17, Agenda 21 of UNCED, as reflected in the "Guiding Principles" of the Long-Term Strategy of COBSEA. The action plan should eventually see the "implementation of integrated coastal and marine management and sustainable development plans and programmes at appropriate levels" (Agenda 21, Chapter 17, paragraph 17.6).

20. The specific management activities that are considered essential for the success of the action plan are as follows:

#### Maintenance of a regional database

21. Effective management action can rely only on the availability, interpretation and use of the right kind of data at the right time (paragraph 4) on critical habitats, endangered species, vulnerable coastal areas, trends in pollution, and corresponding socio-economic and political structures.

#### Development and maintenance of monitoring and environmental assessment programmes

22. Long-term monitoring and periodic assessments of the state of the coastal and marine environment will help provide sufficient early warning of danger to habitats, species, and even human populations from either anthropogenic activities or natural phenomena. Timely management action can thus be instituted.

#### Management aspects of rehabilitation of vital ecosystems and restoration of ecologically or economically important species and communities

23. Active measures to rehabilitate damaged natural habitats (within the realm of scientific and economic possibility) and to replenish depleted species populations will need to be undertaken to restore the kind of sustainable productivity which serves as the basis for the generation of food, other useful products, and amenities on which human populations depend. Establishment of regional mechanism for the development of cooperative management approaches to the conservation of migratory marine species need to be encouraged and developed.

#### Establishment of a viable network of marine protected areas

24. A network of properly managed marine protected areas including strictly protected reserves should be established. Critical habitats to form part of this network are to be selected on the basis of their productivity, uniqueness, or vulnerability. Such a measure would have the twin goals of conserving biodiversity (to the degree possible) and maintaining useful levels of productivity with respect to human needs.

#### Employing appropriate technologies for the prevention and management of pollution

25. Much progress has been made within and outside of the region towards the development of technologies, processes and activities for controlling pollution, either at source, or upon discharge into the marine environment. Every effort should be made to adopt the most appropriate technologies for specific cases, if it is not already in place. There is, however, no substitute for actual prevention of pollution, so that the overall approach should be *preventive* and *precautionary* in nature.

26. With respect to land-based sources of pollution and human activities, States are urged to take account of the the on-going revision of the Montreal Guidelines for the Protection of the Marine Environment from Land-Based Sources of Pollution (Agenda 21, Chapter 17, paragraph 17.24) and development emanating there from and the developments emanating therefrom.

27. With respect to prevention, reduction and control of degradation of the marine environment from sea-based activities, States will be encouraged to enhance the cooperation in marine environment management and adhere to the provisions of the appropriate international conventions and agreements including: UNCLOS (UN Convention on Law of the Sea); MARPOL 73/78; the London Convention 1972 (Convention of the Prevention of Marine Pollution from the Dumping of Waste and Other Matter, 1972) and OPRC 1990 (Convention on Oil Pollution Preparedness Response and Cooperation).

#### Environmental impact assessment

28. An important component of the action plan would be strengthening capabilities in environmental impact assessment in the region in order to prevent or minimize adverse impacts on the marine and coastal environment, leading to sustainable development. In order to improve the efficiency and effectiveness of environmental impact assessment, managing agencies are urged to monitor the actual impacts of use and development and reconcile them against the predictions in environmental impact assessment.

#### Capacity building

29. An indispensable component of any management plan would be the manpower and institutional factor. This again cannot be over-emphasized, and is reiterated several times in Chapter 17, Agenda 21 (e.g. paragraphs 17.15-17.17). In the action plan, sufficient attention will be devoted to education and short-term training, the development of an institutional framework as well as institution building. An ultimate objective of such efforts would be the development of *sustained public awareness* of coastal and marine environmental issues involving targeted educational programs starting with decision makers and continuing through to include education of the general public. Specific effort will be directed towards revision of existing curricula at all levels of formal education. Particular attention should be given to strengthening the role of system-wide considerations. In the educational curricular, emphasis should be given to environmental quality and not to economic considerations. Cooperation between UNEP and UNESCO can be

UNEP(OCA)/EAS IG.5/6  
Annex IV  
Page 6

strengthened to ensure success in this aspect of the work.

30. A priority of the action plan should be the support and strengthening of institutions within the region which have the capability or potential to contribute significantly to its objectives. Such "centres of excellence" will be crucial in its successful implementation.

31. Collaborative linkages will be developed with relevant programmes of the United Nations system and other organizations that aim towards the incorporation of environmental issues into general education at the various academic levels. Particular attention will be paid to the elaboration of appropriate environmental curricula at all levels of the education system with particular emphasis on marine and coastal systems.

32. In capacity building, all relevant sectors of society should be involved (both private and Government), and their resources mobilized. Special attention should be paid to tapping the traditional knowledge and enhancing the involvement of local or indigenous communities in the management of the marine and coastal environment.

#### Other issues

33. In addition to the above items, it will be necessary to take note of points made in Chapter 17, Agenda 21 that are not within the mandate of the action plan (e.g. fisheries management), but which are also critical for the attainment of objectives for comprehensive management and sustainable development of the coastal and marine environment of the region.

### IV. IMPLEMENTATION OF THE EAST ASIAN SEAS ACTION PLAN

#### Overall authority

34. The Coordinating Body on the Seas of East Asia (COBSEA) is the overall authority to determine the content of the action plan, to review its progress and to approve its programme of implementation, including the financial implications. Specific functions of COBSEA are as follows (UNEP(OCA)/EAS IG.4/7, Annex IV, paragraph 15):

- 34.1 Examine, at regular intervals, its Long-Term Strategy, and, on the basis of the evaluation of results of completed activities as well as relevant developments, amend and extend it accordingly;
- 34.2 In order to enhance interregional cooperation and exchange of information, regularly review the situation and advise the Regional Coordinating Unit of the East Asian Seas Action Plan (EAS/RCU--see "Coordination" below) and UNEP on potential areas of cooperative venture with other Regional Seas Programmes;
- 34.3 With an enhanced coordinating function within the wider East Asian Seas region, and in order to avoid duplication of activities, on policy issues, advise and on technical aspects, guide the EAS/RCU on the development of its programme activities;

UNEP(OCA)/EAS IG5/6

Annex IV

Page 7

- 34.4 With reliance on information concerning national, bilateral and regional activities and programmes, advise and assist UNEP and the EAS/RCU on avenues to be pursued for securing possible additional funding for its major priority programmes; and
- 34.5 The projects to be developed for implementation within the priorities of the action plan will be based on the elements of the comprehensive Long-Term Strategy of COBSEA.

#### Coordination

35. The Regional Coordinating Unit of the East Asian Seas Action Plan (EAS/RCU) will assist COBSEA in the implementation of the action plan by serving as the Secretariat for the action plan. In addition to its general coordination function, the EAS/RCU will be tasked with programme and financial management (UNEP(OCA)/EAS IG.4/3, Annex I).

36. The channel of communication between the EAS/RCU and the participating Governments in the East Asian Seas Action Plan will be through the respective National Focal Points. In matters of technical nature, the EAS/RCU may communicate with individuals and/or institutions concerned, providing copies of communications to the relevant National Focal Points.

#### Project formulation, development and funding

37. On the basis of past experiences under the action plan, the steps recommended for project formulation, development and funding are as follows (UNEP(OCA)/EAS IG.4/3, paragraph 40):

- 37.1 The National Focal Points, through the annual meetings of the COBSEA, should as much as possible limit the number and approval of small-scale projects. They should aim at the development of major regional projects, within the framework of the Long-Term Strategy of the COBSEA as well as the priorities that are emerging or already established.
- 37.2 The approved project proposals should be developed (see statement immediately following) and presented through the EAS/RCU, acting as Secretariat, for funding;
- 37.3 For each project proposal or concept approved by COBSEA, an appropriate amount of funds from the East Asian Seas Trust Fund or the Environment Fund will be approved for project development. Project development and formulation should be undertaken with full cooperation of the relevant National Focal Point(s), the Secretariat, and the national project coordinator(s). This could be achieved through short missions involving the national project coordinator(s) and the Secretariat;
- 37.4 The projects thus approved should then, depending on the decision of the COBSEA, be funded either by the Trust Fund or the Environment Fund, or both, or where appropriate be presented to potential donors or funding agencies; and
- 37.5 On the basis of needs identified by various fora in the region, the EAS/RCU shall periodically solicit project proposals from competent national institutions or individuals (e.g. the Association of South East Asian Marine Scientists) for activities to further the objectives of the action plan.

38. In the formulation stage, due consideration should be paid to the scientific aspects of a

UNEP(OCA)/EAS IG.5/6  
Annex IV  
Page 8

project to ensure its technical soundness. Over-ambitious workplans and timetables should also be avoided (UNEP(OCA)/EAS IG.2/10, paragraph 26).

39. Scientific experts should provide assistance in developing the operational details of the programme components (UNEP/IG.26/6, Annex IV, paragraph 19).

#### Project implementation

40. The action plan is to be implemented primarily through national; institutions of the participating States by way of coordinating national, sub-regional and regional activities. The activities of the action plan as described above will be implemented directly by competent national institutions of the participating States, identified by the National Focal Points and with intensive involvement of scientists, technicians, administrators and other appropriate experts from the East Asian Seas region (UNEP/IG.77/6, paragraph 39; UNEP(OCA)/EAS IG.2/10, paragraph 26).

41. Emphasis will be given to collaboration among national institutions, in particular to the exchange of scientists and managers among countries in order to maximize benefits from the expertise that has been cultivated since the inception of the action plan in the region, and also to optimize the use of laboratories that have since been established or developed, including major equipment and facilities that have been acquired in the course of implementation of the action plan and other programmes.

42. International, intergovernmental and regional organizations will play an active role in these activities, contributing their expertise and experience in the management of large-scale multidisciplinary programmes (UNEP/IG.77/6, paragraph 39).

43. In each of the States participating in the action plan, a coordinating mechanisms will be established and/or enhanced under the chairmanship of the respective National Focal Point in order to ensure timely and effective implementation of projects (UNEP/IG.77/6, paragraph 39).

44. For each project, a scientific or technical coordinator shall be clearly identified. Technical matters shall be communicated directly to this coordinator with copies to the implementing organizations and to the National Focal Points (UNEP(OCA)/EAS IG.2/10, paragraph 26).

45. A widely distributed newsletter will be issued regularly in order to improve communication among scientists, resource managers, development experts, policy-makers and the general public on matters relevant to the action plan (UNEP/IG.77/6, paragraph 39).

46. UNEP will be requested to continue supporting the action plan as part of its Regional Seas Programme (UNEP/IG.77/6, paragraph 39).

47. With respect to the routine management of projects, the following are recommended (UNEP(OCA)/EAS IG.2/10, paragraph 26):

- 47.1 Progress reporting, as well as the analysis and evaluation of reports, should be done on a regular basis and as envisaged in the project documents;
- 47.2 A mandatory scientific report should also be included in the reporting procedure for projects, in addition to UNEP's requirements;
- 47.3 Progress (including scientific) reports should be copied to all National Focal Points by the project coordinators for information and for comments. This would serve to promote a clearer understanding among the participating institutions;
- 47.4 Any scientific papers which arise out of or are directly related to EAS projects should accompany the half-yearly reports; and
- 47.5 The scientific symposia of ASEAMS (see paragraph 48 below) and the meetings of experts on the action plan should as far as possible be organized in tandem. The symposia would serve as one forum for the presentation of scientific results of the projects.

#### Project evaluation and revision

48. In order to undertake as objective and comprehensive evaluation as possible of the action plan, COBSEA shall solicit on a regular basis the independent advice of scientists and managers in the region on various aspects ranging from project proposal assessment to the critique of technical outputs of projects. The constructive role of regional groupings such as the Association of Southeast Asian Marine Scientists (ASEAMS) as an independent body representing scientists and managers of the region, and providing advice to Governments of the region and to UNEP, shall be supported and enhanced (UNEP(OCA)/EAS IG.4/7, paragraphs 35-36).

49. Each project revision should not only concentrate on the budget and the workplan and timetable but consideration should also be given to refining or changing the objectives and activities with a view towards strengthening the technical and scientific aspects of a project (UNEP(OCA)/EAS IG.2/10, paragraph 26).

UNEP(OCA)/EAS IG.5/6  
Annex IV  
Page 10

#### Legal framework

50. The feasibility of the development and adoption of a suitable legal framework, consisting of a convention and relevant protocols for the action plan will be explored (UNEP/IG.77/6, paragraph 39).

#### Collaboration

51. In the implementation of the action plan, consideration will be taken at all times of similar projects and programmes being undertaken within and outside the region by national or regional institutions funded by national, regional or international bodies. Every effort will be taken to collaborate with such entities to ensure complementing rather than duplication of efforts, and to benefit from each other's endeavors so that a fund of knowledge and experience is mutually built up for the East Asian Seas region.

### V. INSTITUTIONAL ARRANGEMENTS

#### Policy guidance and coordination

52. The overall authority to determine the content of the action plan, to review its progress and to approve its programme of implementation, including the financial implications, is vested in the annual meetings of governments (intergovernmental meetings) that participate in the action plan. For this purpose, the participating governments will continue to employ the Coordinating Body on the Seas of East Asia (COBSEA) as the sole decision-making body for the action plan. The participating governments have agreed that in the case of the ASEAN countries the existing ASEAN Senior Officials on Environment or their representatives would also function as the government representatives in the COBSEA meetings. However, in the case of non-ASEAN countries the Government appointed National Focal Point(s) will represent their respective governments in the COBSEA.

53. COBSEA will make policy decisions concerning all substantive and financial matters related to the action plan, and in particular, will:

- 53.1 adopt a workplan for the implementation of the programme at each annual meeting;
- 53.2 approve the budgetary resources required to support the work plan and their allocation;
- 53.3 review the progress achieved in implementing the programme since the previous meeting;
- 53.4 evaluate the results achieved;

53.5 at regular intervals review, amend, and extend its Long-Term Strategy; and

53.6 provide information and guidance on the coordination of coastal and marine environmental activities within and without the framework of the East Asian Seas activities.

54. The communication links with respect to policy matters between the COBSEA, UNEP, EAS/RCU, National Focal Points and the national institutions, are shown in *ANNEX I* to this Action Plan document.

#### Overall technical coordination

55. At the request of the governments participating in the action plan the Executive Director of UNEP established the Regional Coordinating Unit for the East Asian Seas Action Plan (EAS/RCU). The EAS/RCU is expected to function primarily as the Secretariat of the action plan. In addition the EAS/RCU is to provide the overall technical coordination and the continuous supervision of the implementation of the action plan.

56. There is a need for a workable channel of communication on technical aspects of the action plan and the projects implemented in its framework, between the UNEP, EAS/RCU and the national institutions involved. At the national level the participating governments will select and operate their own channels of technical coordination. For the overall technical coordination by the EAS/RCU the communication links are outlined in *ANNEX II* of this Action Plan document.

57. The EAS/RCU will be kept optimally efficient and effective in order to maximize the availability of funds for programme activities under the action plan, noting the expanded membership.

#### National Focal Points

58. The channel of communication between EAS/RCU and UNEP on issues related to the East Asian Seas action plan are the Government-nominated National Focal Points. The list of the National Focal Points is given in *ANNEX III*.

59. The role of the National Focal Points (NFP) at the national level will be:

59.1 to act as the official channel of communication between the national institutions of their respective governments, the COBSEA, EAS/RCU and UNEP;

59.2 to coordinate, as appropriate, the participation of national institutions in the implementation of the COBSEA-approved programme(s);

59.3 to consult with and provide guidance to the relevant national institutions in connection with the implementation of the COBSEA-approved activities; and

59.4 to collate and represent the results of the COBSEA-approved projects and activities for presentation at the regular meetings of the COBSEA.

UNEP(OCA)/EAS IG.5/6  
Annex IV  
Page 12

#### National institutions

60. National institutions (NI) (such as research centres, laboratories, government services, universities), designated by each participating government, will provide the institutional basis for carrying out the projects under the action plan. They will be the principal executors of the specific work and research under the action plan. NIs will be designated by the NFPs, taking into account the specific characteristics of the national administration and organizational structure of each State.

61. In order to allow for complete and effective participation in agreed activities, technical assistance (such as provision of equipment and training) may be extended through the action plan to strengthen the capabilities of NIs to participate in the programme.

#### Sub-regional and regional institutions (SRI and RI)

62. Sub-regional (covering only part of the East Asian region as defined by the action plan) and regional institutions will be used to the maximum possible extent for the implementation or coordination of the action plan.

63. Where appropriate, NIs will be proposed by a State to assume a sub-regional or regional role with the objective of providing services in support of the action plan (such as intercalibration exercises or data collection, collation and dissemination).

64. Technical assistance may be provided through the action plan to participating sub-regional and regional institutions.

#### Networking

65. In principle, several NIs nominated by the NFPs in various States of the region could become participants in any one activity of the action plan. The NIs, working on the same activity, could be linked in a network of cooperating institutions.

66. RIs and SRIs participating in an activity may also be considered as members of the activity's institutional network.

67. It may be decided by governments that it would be useful if one member of a network assumed the role of a regional activity centre (RAC) for that network and became responsible for coordinating the activity for which the network was established.

#### International organizations

68. Participation of the international organizations in the programme, in particular those belonging to the United Nations System, can greatly assist in the implementation of the action plan. Therefore, their technical and managerial support for specific projects may be solicited on an *ad hoc* basis. The EAS/RCU and UNEP will be invited to assume the responsibility for coordinating such support. Contacts between the international organizations and NIs participating on specific projects will be channelled through the respective NFPs. Furthermore, in order for the action plan to be strengthened and contribute to the global marine environmental issues the EAS/RCU, UNEP and participating States need to initiate and maintain, wherever appropriate, inter-regional cooperative activities and linkages between relevant and appropriate Regional Seas Programmes.

## VI. FINANCIAL ARRANGEMENTS

### Financial support

69. Financial support for the activities of the action plan may come from:
- 69.1 contributions from participating governments to the East Asian Seas Trust Fund, established in 1982, according to a scale determined from time to time by the governments concerned;
  - 69.2 contributions from the participating governments, made in addition to the regular contributions outlined in (i) above;
  - 69.3 contributions from governments supporting the action plan but not participating in it;
  - 69.4 support from any United Nations organization on a project-funding basis;
  - 69.5 support from the regional and international organizations which are not part of the United Nations System (eg. regional development banks), in most cases on a project-funding basis;
  - 69.6 support from bilateral and multilateral donors; and
  - 69.7 any other source of funding agreed to by the participating governments.
70. Contributions to the action plan may be in cash or in kind (staff time, experts, training, facilities, services, etc.), or both.
71. Ultimately, the action plan is expected to be financially self-supporting through the East Asian Seas Trust Fund or any other approved and appropriate mechanisms. In the meantime, it is expected that the Environment Fund of UNEP will provide financial support to the action plan although this will, over time, decrease as a proportion of the total annual cost.

### Funding (East Asian Seas Trust Fund and UNEP's Environment Fund)

72. The participating Governments pledges to will be paid to the East Asian Seas Trust Fund on the basis of the amounts shown in *ANNEX IV* of this Action Plan document.
73. The cost to UNEP relating to the supervision of the activities of the EAS/RCU, in so far as its own staff and related costs are concerned, is estimated at US\$ 250,000 per year. In addition, UNEP, subject to the availability of funds, will contribute toward the programme in accordance with specific and *ad hoc* needs.

UNEP(OCA)/EAS IG.5/6

Annex IV

Page 14

Management of financial resources

74. In response to the request of the participating governments during the ninth session of Governing Council, a Trust Fund has been established and the authority for its administration delegated by the United Nation's Secretary-General to the Executive Director of UNEP. The Trust Fund will, therefore, be administered according to the financial rules of the United Nations and the terms of reference agreed by the participating governments. These arrangements will be subject to review at *ad hoc* intervals by the participating governments.

75. The Terms of Reference for the Management of the East Asian Seas Trust Fund is provided in *Annex V* of this document.

UNEP(OCA)/EAS IG5/6  
Annex IV  
Page 15

*ANNEX I*

COMMUNICATION LINKS ON POLICY MATTERS

UNEP(OCA)/EAS IG.5/6  
Annex IV  
Page 16

*ANNEX II*

COMMUNICATION LINKS ON TECHNICAL MATTERS

*ANNEX III*

NATIONAL FOCAL POINTS OF THE ACTION PLAN

The following are the National Focal Points of the East Asian Seas Action Plan:

Australia Territories	Assistant Secretary Environment Strategies Directorate Department of the Environment, Sport and
Brunei Darussalam	Head Environment Unit Ministry of Development
Cambodia, Kingdom of	Minister of Environment Ministry of the Environment
China, People's Republic of	Chief Division of Marine Environmental Management Department of Nature Conservation National Environmental Protection Agency
Indonesia	The Assistant Minister Ministry of State for Environment
Korea, Republic of	Director International Environment Organizations Division International Economic Affairs Bureau Ministry of Foreign Affairs
Malaysia	Director-General Department of Environment Ministry of Science, Technology and the Environment
Philippines	Director Environmental Management Bureau Department of Environment and Natural Resources
Singapore	Head, International Environment and Policy Department Ministry of the Environment
Thailand	Secretary-General Office of Environmental Policy and Planning

UNEP(OCA)/EAS IG.5/6  
Annex IV  
Page 18

Vietnam,  
Socialist Republic of

Ministry of Science, Technology and Environment

Director  
National Environmental Agency  
Ministry of Science, Technology and the Environment

*ANNEX IV*LEVEL OF PLEDGES OF THE PARTICIPATING STATES  
TO THE EAST ASIAN SEAS TRUST FUND

The following are the level of the pledges of the participating States to the East Asian Seas Trust Fund:

State	US dollars	
Australia	15,000	(for 1994)
Cambodia, Kingdom of	5,000	(for 1995)
China, People's Republic of	15,000	(.....)
Indonesia	33,000	
Korea, Republic of	.....	(.....)
Malaysia	18,700	
Philippines	20,900	
Singapore	1,100	
Thailand	20,900	
Vietnam, Socialist Republic of	7,000	(for 1995)

*ANNEX V*

TERMS OF REFERENCE FOR THE MANAGEMENT OF  
THE EAST ASIAN SEAS TRUST FUND

1. The Trust Fund of the Action Plan for the Protection and Sustainable Development of the Marine Environment and Coastal Areas of the East Asian Region, hereinafter referred to as the "Trust Fund", is established to provide financial support for the Action Plan originally adopted by the Intergovernmental Meeting on the Protection and Development of the Marine Environment and Coastal Areas of the East Asian Region, Manila, 29 April 1981 and subsequently revised by the Meeting of Plenipotentiaries on the East Asian Seas Action Plan (Bangkok, 27-28 October 1994).
2. The Trust Fund, established initially for two calendar years beginning 1 January 1982, will be extended periodically by the participating countries. Whenever the participating States wish the Trust Fund to be extended beyond the period agreed to, the decision shall be made at the appropriate COBSEA meeting and the Executive Director of the United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP) shall be so advised in writing at least six months before that date. It is understood that such extension of the Trust Fund shall be decided at the discretion of the Secretary-General of the United Nations.
3. The administration of the Trust Fund shall be entrusted to the Secretary-General of the United Nations and, should he deem it necessary, to the Executive Director of UNEP. The establishment and management of the Trust Fund shall be governed by the Financial Regulations and Rules of the United Nations, the Staff Regulations and Rules of the United Nations, and other administrative policies or procedures promulgated by the Secretary-General. It is understood that these Rules provide that the United Nations shall make a deduction equal to 13 per cent of all expenditures financed from the Trust Fund to defray the administrative support costs of the Trust Fund.
4. The expenditures from the Trust Fund shall be made in accordance with the decisions of financial arrangements adopted by the annual Intergovernmental Meetings (COBSEA). No expenditure from the Trust Fund shall be made in advance of the receipt of contributions.
5. All contributions shall be paid in full convertible United States dollars. Contributions from the States of the region shall be paid in equal yearly installments. The contributions shall be due on or about 1 January of each year. Contributions shall be paid into the following account, indicating the purpose of payment as East Asian Seas:  
  
Account No. 015-002756 UNEP General Trust Funds Account  
Chemical Bank, United Nations Branch  
New York, N.Y. 10017  
U.S.A.
6. Contributions received into the Trust Fund and not immediately required to finance activities, shall be invested at the discretion of the United Nations, and any income shall be credited to the Trust Fund.
7. The Trust Fund shall be subject to audit by the United Nations Internal Audit Service.

UNEP(OCA)/EAS IG5/6

Annex IV

Page 21

8. The budget estimates, prepared in United States dollars, covering the income and expenditure for each of the two calendar years constituting the financial period to which they relate as well as the work plan for the same period, shall be submitted to the annual intergovernmental meetings of the States participating in the East Asian Seas Action Plan.

9. The Secretary-General, or the organization designated by him to administer the Trust Fund, shall submit annual reports on the administration of the Trust Fund to the annual intergovernmental meetings of the States participating in the East Asian Seas Action Plan.



**Annex 810**

*Oxford Chinese Dictionary* (2010)



---

.....

# The Oxford Chinese Dictionary

.....

English-Chinese • Chinese-English

**Chief Editors**

Julie Kleeman • Harry Yu

**OXFORD**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

外语教学与研究出版社  
FOREIGN LANGUAGE TEACHING AND RESEARCH PRESS

# 牛津英汉汉英词典

英汉 · 汉英

主编

Julie Kleeman · 于海江

**OXFORD**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

外语教学与研究出版社  
FOREIGN LANGUAGE TEACHING AND RESEARCH PRESS

**OXFORD**

UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford.  
It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship,  
and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi  
Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi  
New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in

Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece  
Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore  
South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

Oxford is a registered trade mark of Oxford University Press  
in the UK and in certain other countries

Published in the United States  
by Oxford University Press Inc., New York

© Oxford University Press and  
Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press 2010

Database right Oxford University Press (maker)

First published 2010

The Chinese-English source text is adapted from  
the New Century Chinese-English Dictionary,  
published by Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press  
© Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press 2003

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced,  
stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means,  
without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press,  
or as expressly permitted by Law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate  
reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction  
outside the scope of the above should be sent to the Rights Department,  
Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover  
and you must impose the same condition on any acquirer

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data  
Data available

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data  
Data available

Typeset by Oxford University Press (China) Ltd.  
Printed in China by C&C Offset Printing Co., Ltd.

ISBN 978-0-19-920761-9

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

- 【奔泻】 bēnxiè (动) pour down: 瀑布~而下。 The waterfall rushes down.
- 【奔涌】 bēnyǒng (动) surge: ~向前 surge ahead || 泪水~ tears gushing from one's eyes
- 【奔逐】 bēnzhú (动) run after: 孩子们在沙滩上~嬉戏。 The children are chasing each other and having fun on the beach.
- 【奔走】 bēnzǒu (动) ① (跑) run: ~相告 ② (四处活动) dash about: 为某事四处~ rush about all over the place to get sth. done || 他~了几天,事情还没有个结果。 He ran around in vain for several days.
- 【奔走呼号】 bēnzǒu-hūhào (成) go around campaigning for a cause: 为慈善募捐活动~ go collecting for a charitable cause
- 【奔走相告】 bēnzǒu-xiānggào (成) rush about spreading the news

**贲 (贲) bēn** (动) (书) run: 狼~ run like a wolf  
 【贲门】 bēnmén (名) [生理] cardia

**铍 (铍) bēn**  
 ① (名) adze  
 ② (动) ① (砍削) cut with an adze: ~木头 cut wood with an adze ② (口) (指刀刃豁口) be dented: 刀刃~了。 The blade of the knife was broken.

【铍子】 bēnzi (名) adze

**běn**

**本 bēn**

- ① (名) ① (根) root: 木有~, 水有源。 A tree has its roots, just as a river has its source. ② (根本) basis: 胜利之~ foundation of victory ▶ ~末倒置, 忘~ ③ (册子) book: ▶ 笔记~, 日记~, 账~ ④ (版本) edition: 简装/精装~ paperback/hardback edition || 影印~ facsimile ▶ 抄~, 选~, 译~ ⑤ (脚本) script: ▶ 唱~ ⑥ (奏章) memorial to the emperor: 参某人~ present a memorial to impeach sb. ⑦ (本金) capital: ~小利大 make big profits with little capital || 无~生意 deal not requiring any input of capital ▶ 股~, 资~, 够~ ⑧ (费用) cost: ▶ 成~, 工~
- ② (形) ① (固有) original: ▶ ~能, ~性, ~原 ② (中心) principal: ▶ ~部, ~题
- ③ (副) originally: 我~想提醒他, 只是没有机会。 I had wanted to remind him but I didn't get the chance. ▶ ~来
- ④ (代) ① (自己方面的) one's own: ~单位 one's own department || ~校 our school ▶ ~地, ~国, ~人 ② (这) this: ~案被告 defendant in this case || ~合同 the present contract || ~星期 this week
- ⑤ (介) according to: ~着章程办事 act in accordance with the rules and regulations
- ⑥ (量) [used for books, plays or films]: 三~书 three books || 两~账 two accounts || 头~戏 first play || 这部电影有八~。 This is an eight-reel film.
- 【本本】 běnběn (名) printed documents
- 【本本主义】 běnběnzhǔyì (名) pedantry
- 【本市】 běnbì (简称) = 本位货币
- 【本部】 běnbù (名) headquarters: 校~ main campus
- 【本埠】 běnbù (名) this town: ~信件/邮件 local letter/mail
- 【本草】 běncǎo (名) Chinese herbal medicine: (~纲目) Compendium of Materia

**《本草纲目》**

Compendium of Materia Medica, the most comprehensive medical text in the history of Chinese medicine, compiled in the Ming Dynasty by Li Shizhen (李时珍), and first published in 1593. It comprises 52 volumes containing thousands of detailed descriptions of herbs and their properties, illustrations, and prescriptions for the cure of common illnesses. Using substantial scientific data, the work corrected the errors of earlier books and proposed a relatively scientific classification of medicines.

- 【本初子午线】 běnchū zǐwǔxiàn (名) prime meridian
- 【本岛】 běndǎo (名) main island: 台湾~ the main island of Taiwan
- 【本地】 běndì (名) this locality: ~风俗 local customs || ~居民 indigenous people || ~新闻 local news || ~邮件 local mail
- 【本地人】 běndìrén (名) native
- 【本分】 běnfèn ① (名) one's duty: 尽自己的~ do one's bit ② (形) content: 守~ know one's place || 为人~ behave properly || ~人 honest person
- 【本该】 běngāi (副) (口) ought to have done
- 【本固枝荣】 běngù-zhíróng (成) (喻) things will develop only when the foundation is sound
- 【本国】 běngúo (名) one's native country: 发展~经济 develop the domestic economy || ~制造 domestically manufactured
- 【本国语】 běnguóyǔ (名) mother tongue
- 【本行】 běnháng (名) ① (指专业) one's trade: 干老~ follow one's old profession || 画画本不是他的~。 Painting was not his original occupation. ② (工作) one's present job: 熟悉~业务 know one's stuff ▶ 三句话不离~
- 【本纪】 běnjì (名) basic annals
- 【本家】 běnjiā (名) member of the same family: ~兄弟 brothers of the same clan
- 【本届】 běnjiè (形) current: ~毕业生 this year's graduates || ~年会 this year's annual conference
- 【本金】 běnjīn (名) ① (指存款) principal: 这笔~的利息会相当可观。 The interest on this principal will be quite impressive. ② (指投资) capital: 做生意就得有~。 You need capital to start any business.
- 【本科】 běnkē (名) undergraduate course: 大学~ university undergraduate programme || ~毕业生 university graduate
- 【本来】 běnlái ① (形) original: ~的想法 original idea || ~的颜色 natural colours ② (副) ① (最初) originally: 他~想在沿海城市工作。 At first he intended to work in a coastal city. || 这篇文章~没打算发表。 This article was not intended for publication. ② (表示理应如此) in the first place: ~就不该提拔他当首席财务官。 It goes without saying that he should never have been promoted to chief financial officer.
- 【本来面目】 běnlái miànmù (成) true colours: 恢复历史的~ restore historical facts || 认清他们的~ see them in their true colours
- 【本垒】 běnlěi (名) [体育] home base: ~打 home run
- 【本利】 běnlì (名) principal and interest: ▶ 连本带利
- 【本领】 běnlǐng (名) ability: 苦练~ train hard to improve one's skills || 过硬的~ first-rate capabilities
- 【本名】 běnmíng (名) ① (原来的名字) original name ② (本人的名字) first name

**奔贲铍本 bēn ▶ bēn**

- 【本命年】 běnmìngnián (名) zodiac year [every 12th year from the year one was born]
- 【本末】 běnmò (名) (喻) ① (完整的经过) ins and outs: 详述~ tell the whole story ② (主次) the fundamental and the incidental: 分清~ distinguish between what is essential and what is trivial
- 【本末倒置】 běnmò-dǎozhì (成) put the cart before the horse: 只管工作, 不顾身体, 是~。 To work at the expense of one's health is to get one's priorities mixed up.
- 【本能】 běnnéng (名) instinct: ~反应 instinctive reaction || 动物~ animal instinct || 求生~ instinct for survival
- 【本票】 běnpǎo (名) ① (支票) banker's cheque ② (期票) promissory note
- 【本期】 běnqī (名) [会计] current period
- 【本钱】 běnqián (名) capital: 我们~少。 We have only a small amount of capital. || (喻) 身体是一切的~。 Health is the prerequisite for everything else.
- 【本人】 běnrén (代) ① (我) I: 这是~的亲身经历。 This is my own experience. || 我~愿意跟他见面。 For my part I will be ready to meet him. ② (用于复指) oneself: 你必须~来取。 You must come in person for it. || 主任~没到会。 The dean himself failed to show up at the meeting.
- 【本嗓】 běnsǎng (名) one's natural voice
- 【本色】 běnsè (名) inherent qualities: 保持劳动人民的~ retain the true character of the working people || 英雄~ true qualities of a hero
- 【本色】 běnshǎi (名) natural colour
- 【本身】 běnshēn (代) itself: 设计~存在的缺点 inherent weakness in the design || 生活~就是复杂多样的。 Life itself is extremely diverse. ▶ 打铁先得~硬
- 【本事】 běnshi (名) original story: 电影~ synopsis of the film
- 【本事】 běnshi (名) capability: 年纪小, ~可不小 be young but skilful || 真正有~的人 people of genuine ability
- 【本题】 běntí (名) subject under discussion: 脱离~ beside the point || 这与~无关。 This is irrelevant.
- 【本体】 běntǐ (名) ① [哲学] (自身) thing-in-itself ~论 ontology ② (主体) main part
- 【本土】 běntǔ (名) ① (指生长地) native land: ▶ 本乡~ ② (指国家) metropolitan territory: 英国的~并不大。 England's metropolitan territory is actually quite small.
- 【本位】 běnwèi (名) ① (标准) standard: ▶ 金~ ② (指岗位或单位) one's own department: ~工作 one's own job
- 【本位货币】 běnwèi huòbì (名) standard currency
- 【本位主义】 běnwèizhǔyì (名) sectionalism
- 【本文】 běnwén (名) ① (这篇文章) this text ② (原文) source text
- 【本息】 běnxī (名) principal and interest: 偿还~ pay back the principal and interest
- 【本乡本土】 běnxiāng běntǔ (名) native place: 都~的, 还客气什么。 We're all natives of this place, so no need to stand on ceremony.
- 【本相】 běnxiàng (名) true features: ~毕露 show one's true colours
- 【本心】 běnxīn (名) original intent: 出于~ out of one's true will
- 【本性】 běnxìng (名) natural disposition: ~善良 be intrinsically good || 侵略~ aggressive nature
- 【本性难移】 běnxìng-nányí (成) you can't expect a leopard to change its spots
- 【本业】 běnyè (名) ① (指职业) one's own profession: 安于~ be satisfied with one's

**b**

【补时】bǔshí (动) [体育] have extra time: 伤停~  
 【补水】bǔshuǐ (动) provide supplementary water: 水库负责在枯水期向漓江~。In the dry season the reservoir provides supplementary water to Lijiang.  
 【补台】bǔtái (动) help sb. out  
 【补贴】bǔtiē (动) subsidize: ~家用 supplement the family income (名) subsidy: 出口/贸易~ export/trade subsidy | 伙食~ food subsidies | 交通~ traffic allowance | 住房~ housing subsidy || 他们依靠政府~维持生存。They depend on government subsidies for their survival.  
 【补习】bǔxí (动) take extra classes  
 【补习班】bǔxíbān (名) remedial class  
 【补休】bǔxiū (动) take deferred holidays  
 【补选】bǔxuǎn (名) by-election: ~人大代表 hold a by-election for a deputy to the People's Congress  
 【补血】bǔxuè (动) nourish the blood: ~药 haematinic  
 【补牙】bǔyá (动) fill a tooth cavity (名) tooth filling  
 【补养】bǔyǎng (动) take nourishing food to build up one's health  
 【补药】bǔyào (名) tonic  
 【补液】bǔyè (动) give fluid infusion (名) liquid tonic: 营养~ liquid tonic  
 【补遗】bǔyí (名) addendum: 这本词典的新版本附有长达 50 页的~。The new edition of the dictionary includes a 50-page addendum.  
 【补益】bǔyì (书) (名) benefit: 大有~ be of great help (动) benefit: ~国家 benefit the nation  
 【补语】bǔyǔ (名) [语言] complement  
 【补涨】bǔzhǎng (动) rise in price accordingly: 粮价上涨后, 肉禽也开始~。After the price of grain went up, the price of poultry started to rise accordingly. || 不少个股出现~。A large number of individual shares have risen in price accordingly.  
 【补正】bǔzhèng (动) supplement and correct: ~如下 make the following corrections and improvements  
 【补助】bǔzhù (动) subsidize: ~困难学生 subsidize needy students (名) subsidy: 困难~ hardship grant | 失业~ unemployment benefit | 医疗~ medical benefit  
 【补助金】bǔzhùjīn (名) grant: 临时就业~ temporary employment subsidy | 伤残~ disability pension  
 【补缀】bǔzhuì (动) mend: 她把新布~在他的旧上衣上。She patched his old coat with a new piece of cloth.  
 【补妆】bǔzhuāng (动) touch up one's make-up  
 【补足】bǔzú (动) make up for a deficiency: ~亏空 make up for the deficit  
 捕 bǔ (动) catch: ~鱼 catch fish || 凶手已被~。The murderer has already been arrested. ▶~获, 追~  
 【捕风捉影】bǔfēng-zhuōyǐng (成) (喻) spread rumours or act on unsubstantiated evidence  
 【捕获】bǔhuó (动) catch: ~猎物 capture one's prey || ~逃犯 seize an escaped convict  
 【捕集】bǔjí (动) (获取) capture: (收集) collect: 我国的碳~技术处于世界领先地位。China's carbon capture technology is a world leader.  
 【捕鲸】bǔjīng (动) whale: ~船 whaling ship

【捕快】búkuài (名) (旧) captor in a yamen  
 【捕捞】búlāo (动) catch: ~鱼虾 catch fish and shrimps || ~季节 catching season || ~许可证 fishing licence  
 【捕猎】búlüè (动) hunt: 这种动物被~得快要灭绝了。The game is being hunted to the verge of extinction.  
 【捕拿】bǔná (动) arrest: ~逃犯 arrest escaped prisoners  
 【捕杀】búshā (动) catch and kill: 严禁~濒危动物。It is strictly forbidden to hunt endangered species.  
 【捕食】búshí (动) (捕捉) hunt for food: 狼又出来~了。The wolf reappeared in search of food. (2) (猎获并食用) hunt and eat: 鹿被狮子~了。The deer fell prey to the lion.  
 【捕鼠器】búshǔqì (名) mousetrap  
 【捕捉】búzhǔō (动) (捉) catch: ~海龟 fish for turtles || ~老鼠/昆虫 catch mice/insects (2) (喻) (抓住) grasp: ~镜头 take a candid shot || ~战机 seize the right moment to attack

## 哺 bǔ

(动) nurse  
 (名) food being chewed in one's mouth: 吐~ spit out chewed food  
 【哺乳】bǔrǔ (动) breast-feed: 给孩子~ nurse one's baby || ~期 lactation period  
 【哺乳动物】bǔrǔ dòngwù (名) mammal: ~学 mammalogy  
 【哺养】bǔyǎng (动) (书) feed: 把婴儿交给她~ give the baby to her to feed  
 【哺育】bǔyù (动) (1) (喂养) feed: ~婴儿 feed the baby (2) (喻) (培养) raise: 国家~了我们。The country has nurtured us.

## 堡 bǔ

▶bǎo, pù  
 【堡子】bǔzi (名) (方) (1) (指小城镇) town or village surrounded with protective earthen walls (2) (村落) village

## bù

不 bù ▶p. 221 (副) (1) (表否定) not: ~参加选举 stay out of an election || ~符合标准 not up to standard || ~愿意 be unwilling || ~知道 not know || ~违法 unlawful || ~轨 conspiracy || ~规则 irregular || 我~想去。I don't want to go. (2) (表不在乎或不相干) no matter: 不管喜欢~喜欢, 你都得干。Like it or not, you will have to do it. || 信~信由你。Believe it or not. (3) (表否定回答) no: 他是学生吗? ——~, 他不是。Is he a student? — No, he isn't. || 再来杯茶吧? ——~, 谢谢。How about another cup of tea? — No more, thanks. (4) (表疑问) [used to indicate question]: 这本书他喜欢~? Does he like the book? || 你去看电影~? Are you going to the cinema? || 他走~走? Is he leaving? || 我漂亮~漂亮? Am I beautiful? (5) (表无法实现) [used to indicate that sth. is not achieved]: 吃~饱, 穿~暖 badly fed and clothed || 他什么事都做~好。He can do nothing right. (6) (表选择) either ... or ...: 他~是上课就是在写论文。If he's not in class then he's writing his thesis.  
 【不安】bù'ān (形) (1) (指环境) unstable: ▶动荡~ (2) (指心情) uneasy: 内心~ be inwardly disturbed || 她良心~。Her conscience pricks her. || 调查结果令人~。The findings are disturbing. ▶坐立~ (3) (套) (抱歉) sorry: 给你添了这么多麻烦, 真是~。I'm sorry to have caused you so much trouble.  
 【不安本分】bù'ān-bènfēn (成) be dissatisfied with one's post  
 【不谙世故】bù'ān-shìgù (成) know little of the world: 他不谙人情世故。He has seen little of life.  
 【不白之冤】bùbáizhiyuān (成) undressed grievance: 蒙受~ suffer from a gross injustice  
 【不败之地】bùbàizhīdì (成) invincible position: 立于~ put oneself in an invincible position  
 【不卑不亢】bùbēi-bùkàng (成) be neither haughty nor humble: 对上司~ be neither supercilious nor obsequious to one's superiors  
 【不备】bùbèi (形) unprepared: 乘其~ catch sb. off guard ▶攻其~  
 【不比】bùbǐ (动) (1) (比不上) be inferior to: 他在班里~任何人差。He's second to none in the class. (2) (不同于) be unlike: 学习~玩耍, 得下苦功夫。Unlike playing, study requires painstaking efforts.  
 【不比不知道, 一比吓一跳】bùbǐ bù zhīdào, yī bǐ xià yī tiào (俗) if you don't make comparisons then you don't know, but once you do, prepare for a shock  
 【不必】bùbì (副) not necessarily: ~着急 there's no hurry || 你~介意。You don't have to care at all. || 咱俩就~拘礼了。Let's dispense with formalities.  
 【不避艰险】bùbìjiǎnxiǎn (成) flinch from no difficulty or danger  
 【不变】bùbiàn (动) be unchanged: 以~应万变 counter numerous changes with the same unchanged stance  
 【不变价格】bùbiànjíagé (名) fixed price  
 【不便】bùbiàn (形) inconvenient: 交通~ have poor transport facilities || 行动~ move with difficulty (动) be short of cash: 手头~就吭声。Do give me a call if you're strapped for cash.  
 【不辨菽麦】bùbiànshūmài (成) lack the least bit of common knowledge  
 【不才】bùcái (书) (代) (谦) I: 恐怕~难当此任。I'm afraid I am not up to the job. (形) talentless: 我虽~, 但愿为您效劳。I may have little talent, but I will be glad to offer you my services.  
 【不测】bùcè ▶p. 772 (形) unexpected: 应付~事件 cope with unexpected events ▶天有~风云 (名) accident: 险遭~ have a narrow escape || 提高警惕, 以防~ sharpen one's vigilance against possible contingency  
 【不曾】bùcéng (副) never: 我~受过这样的善待。Never before have I been treated so well. || 我一生中~如此伤心过。I have never felt so unhappy in all my life.  
 【不成】bùchéng (动) (1) = 不行 bùxíng A1 (2) (不足) fall short of: ~比例 be out of proportion || ~敬意。This can hardly express my respect to you. (3) = 不行 bùxíng B1, B2 (4) (助) [used at the end of a rhetorical question beginning with 难道 or 莫非]: 难道我们就放弃~? Are we just going to give it up? || 莫非他被判错了~? Has he been wrongly sentenced after all?  
 【不成功, 便成仁】bù chénggōng, biàn chéngren (成) fight to win or die in the process  
 【不成体统】bùchéng-tǐtǒng (成) most

in a leading position  
**【居中】** jūzhōng **△** **〈副〉** between two parties: ~斡旋 mediate between disputants  
**△** **〈动〉** centre: 标题~。 The title is centred.  
**【居住】** jūzhù **〈动〉** live: ~海外 reside abroad || 这儿无人~。 No one lives here.  
**【居住地】** jūzhùdì **〈名〉** place of residence  
**【居住面积】** jūzhù miáncí **〈名〉** floor space  
**【居住证】** jūzhùzhèng **〈名〉** residence permit

**驹 (駒)** jū **〈名〉** **①** (少壮的马) colt **②** (驹子) foal: 驹~儿 foal  
**【驹子】** jūzi **〈名〉** foal: ▶马~

**疽** jū **〈名〉** [中医] subcutaneous ulcer: ▶炭~

**掬** jū **〈动〉** **〈书〉** hold with both hands: ~水 scoop up water with both hands ▶ 憨态可~, 笑容可~

**据** jū ▶ 拮据 jiéjū  
 ▶ jù

**起** jū ▶ 越起 zǐjū  
 ▶ qiè

**锔 (銅)** jū **〈动〉** mend (crookery) with clamps: ~缸/碗 mend a jar/bowl with clamps  
 ▶ jù

**【锔子】** jūzi **〈名〉** clamp used in mending crockery

**雉** jū  
**【雌雉】** jūjū **〈名〉** **〈古〉** turtle dove

**鲟 (鮟)** jū **〈名〉** [鱼类] gudgeon

**裾** jū **〈名〉** **〈书〉** full front/back of a Chinese gown

**鞠** jū **〈动〉** **①** **〈书〉** (养育) rear: ▶~养 **②** (弯曲) bow: ▶~躬  
**【鞠躬】** jūgōng **△** **〈动〉** bow: ~道谢 bow one's thanks || 深深地~ make a deep bow  
**③** **〈形〉** **〈书〉** discreet and scrupulous: ▶~尽瘁  
**【鞠躬尽瘁】** jūgōng-jìn cuì **〈成〉** work with utter devotion: ~, 死后而已 give one's all until one's heart ceases to beat  
**【鞠养】** jūyǎng **〈动〉** **〈书〉** raise: ~之恩 gratitude for sb.'s loving care in bringing oneself up

jú

**局 (侷、跼)** jú **〈形〉** confined: ▶~促, ~限

**局** jú **〈名〉** **①** (部分) part: ▶~部 **②** (机关单位) department: ~级干部 bureau-level official ▶公安~, 税务~ **③** (业务机构) functional office: ▶电信~, 邮~ **④** (指商店名称) store: ▶书~

**局** jú **〈名〉** **①** **〈书〉** (棋盘) chessboard: ▶棋~ **②** (局面) situation: ▶~势, 大~, 僵~, 结~ **③** (圈套) trick: ▶骗~ **④** (聚会)

gathering: ▶赌~, 饭~, 牌~  
**②** **〈量〉** game: 输 (给某人) 一~ lose a set (to sb.) || 下一~棋 play a game of chess || 平~ draw

**【局部】** jùbù **〈名〉** part: ~地区 some areas || ~利益 partial and local interests || ~麻醉 local anaesthesia || ~战争 local war

**【局促】** jùcù **〈形〉** **①** (狭小) poky: ~的房间 cramped room **②** (拘谨) constrained: ~不安 feel ill at ease

**【局点】** jùdiǎn **〈名〉** [体育] game point  
**【局面】** júmiàn **〈名〉** situation: 打开~ make a breakthrough || 控制~ bring the situation under control

**【局内人】** jùnrènrén **〈名〉** insider  
**【局骗】** jùpiàn **〈动〉** **〈书〉** swindle: ~钱财 swindle money (out of sb.)

**【局势】** júshì **〈名〉** situation: 稳定/整顿~ stabilize the situation || 制造紧张~ create tensions || ~正在恶化。 The situation is deteriorating.

**【局外人】** jùwàirén **〈名〉** outsider  
**【局限】** júxiàn **〈动〉** limit: 克服自身的~ overcome one's limitations || ~于学术问题 be confined to academics

**【局限性】** júxiànxìng **〈名〉** limitations: 每个人都有自己的~。 Everyone has their own limitations.

**【局域网】** jùyùwǎng **〈名〉** local area network (LAN)

**【局子】** júzi **〈名〉** **〈旧〉** police station

**桔** jú **〈名〉** tangerine  
 ▶ jié

**菊** jú **〈名〉** chrysanthemum: 赏~ enjoy beautiful chrysanthemums

**【菊花】** júhuā **〈名〉** chrysanthemum

**【菊石】** júshí **〈名〉** [地质] ammonite

**【菊坛】** jútán **〈名〉** theatrical circles

**焗** jú **〈动〉** **〈方〉** steam: 盐~鸡 salted and steamed chicken

**【焗油】** júyóu **〈动〉** put treatment cream on one's hair: ~膏 hair treatment cream

**锔 (銅)** jú **〈名〉** [化学] curium (Cm)  
 ▶ jù

**橘** jú **〈名〉** tangerine

**【橘红】** júhóng **△** **〈形〉** reddish orange

**②** **〈名〉** [中药] dried tangerine peel

**【橘黄】** júhuáng **〈形〉** orange

**【橘络】** júluò **〈名〉** [中药] tangerine pith

**【橘汁】** júzhī **〈名〉** orange juice

**【橘子】** júzi **〈名〉** tangerine

jǔ

**柜** jǔ **〈名〉** cabinet  
 ▶ guì  
**【柜柳】** jǔliǔ **〈名〉** [植物] acer truncatum

**咀** jǔ **〈动〉** chew: ▶~嚼, 含英~华  
 ▶ zuǐ

**【咀嚼】** jǔjué **〈动〉** **①** **〈本〉** chew: 食物要仔细~后再吞咽。 Chew your food well before swallowing it. **②** **〈喻〉** mull over: ~文义 mull over the meaning of the phrase

**沮** jǔ **〈动〉** **〈书〉** **①** (阻止) prevent: ▶~遏 **②** (颓丧) turn gloomy: ▶~丧

▶ jǔ  
**【沮遏】** jǔè **〈动〉** **〈书〉** hold back  
**【沮丧】** jǔsàng **△** **〈形〉** depressed: 神情~ look dejected **②** **〈动〉** dishearten: ~敌人的士气 sap the enemy's morale

枸

jǔ  
 ▶ gōu, gōu  
**【枸橼】** jiǔyuán **〈名〉** [植物] citron  
**【枸橼酸】** jiǔyuánsuān **〈名〉** [化学] citric acid  
**【枸橼酸钠】** jiǔyuánsuānnà **〈名〉** [化学] sodium citrate

**矩** jǔ **〈名〉** **①** (曲尺) (carpenter's) square: ▶~尺 **②** (方形) rectangle: ▶~形 **③** (规则) rules: ▶~规~, 循规蹈~

**【矩臂】** jǔbì **〈名〉** [物理] moment arm

**【矩尺】** jǔchǐ = 曲尺 qūchǐ

**【矩形】** jǔxíng **〈名〉** rectangle

**【矩阵】** jǔzhèn **〈名〉** [数学] matrix: ~式 matrix type

举 (舉)

jǔ  
**△** **〈动〉** **①** (往上托) raise: ~起双手 raise one's hands || ~杯畅饮 raise a glass and drink to one's heart's content || ~杯祝酒 raise one's glass in a toast ▶~案齐眉, 纲~目张 **②** (发动) start: ▶~办, ~兵, ~行 **③** (选举) elect: ▶~荐, 推~, 选~ **④** (列举) cite: ~个具体的例子 cite a concrete example ▶~例, ~一反三, 不胜枚~

**⑤** **〈名〉** **①** (行为) act: ▶~止, 多此一~, 善~ **②** = 举人 jǔrén

**③** **〈形〉** **〈书〉** entire: ~家出游 the whole family go on a tour ▶~国

**【举哀】** jǔāi **〈动〉** **〈书〉** go into mourning: 为死者~ go into mourning for the deceased

**【举案齐眉】** jǔ'ān-qí méi **〈成〉** live in conjugal harmony

**【举办】** jǔbàn **〈动〉** hold: ~奥运会 hold the Olympic Games || 他下月将~个人画展。 He is staging an exhibition of his paintings.

**【举报】** jǔbào **〈动〉** report an offence: ~不法行为 report illegal activities || ~电话 tip-off (phone) call || ~人 informer || ~信 written accusation

**【举兵】** jǔbīng **〈动〉** **〈书〉** raise an army: ~起义 raise an army to revolt

**【举不胜举】** jǔbùshèngjǔ **〈成〉** the list is endless: 这样的例子~。 There are too many examples like this to count.

**【举步维艰】** jǔbù-wéijiān **〈成〉** have difficulty moving forward: 公司刚刚成立, ~。 The company has just set up and is having trouble making progress.

**【举措】** jǔcuò **〈名〉** **〈书〉** measure: 重大~ important measures || 改革的新~ new moves toward reform || ~失当 make a bad move

**【举动】** jǔdòng **〈名〉** movement: 报告敌人的~ report on enemy activity || ~灵活 be nimble in movement || 轻率的~ rash act

**【举发】** jǔfā **〈动〉** **〈书〉** report to the authorities: 向公安机关~腐败现象 report corrupt dealings to the public security bureau

**【举凡】** jǔfán **〈副〉** **〈书〉** ranging from ... to ...

**【举国】** jǔguó **〈名〉** whole nation: ~上下 the whole nation from top to bottom || ~欢腾 the whole nation is jubilant

**【举家】** jǔjiā **〈名〉** **〈书〉** whole family: ~南迁。 The whole family moved to the south.

## nèi ▶ néng 内恁嫩能

underpants, underwear (美) || 女~ panties, knickers (英)

【内窥镜】 nèikūijǐng (名) [医学] endoscope

【内涝】 nèilào (名) waterlogging

【内里】 nèilǐ (名) inside: 这事~有一些原因你还不知道呢。 You don't know some of the details involved.

【内力】 nèilì (名) [物理] internal force

【内敛】 nèiliǎn (形) introverted: 性格~ be introverted by nature

【内流河】 nèiliúhé (名) inland river

【内陆】 nèilù (名) interior: ~城市 inland city || ~性气候 inland climate

【内陆国】 nèilùguó (名) landlocked country

【内陆河】 nèilùhé (名) continental river

【内陆湖】 nèilùhú (名) inland lake

【内乱】 nèilùàn (名) domestic turmoil: 平息~ appease internal strife || 引起~ beget civil strife

【内罗毕】 Nèilúobǐ (名) Nairobi

【内贸】 nèimào (名) domestic trade: 扩大~ expand domestic trade

【内蒙】 Nèiměng (简称) = 内蒙古

【内蒙古】 Nèiměnggǔ ▶ p. 661 (名) Inner Mongolia: ~自治区 Inner Mongolian Autonomous Region

【内幕】 nèimù (名) inside story: 揭开~ reveal the inside story || ~新闻 keyhole report

【内聘】 nèipìn (动) be appointed within one's place of work

【内企】 nèiqǐ (简称) = 内资企业

【内切圆】 nèiqiēyuán (名) inscribed circle (of a triangle)

【内亲】 nèiqīn (名) relatives of one's wife

【内勤】 nèiqín (名) ① (指工作) office work ② (指人) office staff

【内情】 nèiqíng (名) inside story: 不了解~ be ignorant of the inside story || 熟悉~ be in the know

【内燃机】 nèiránjī (名) internal combustion engine: ~机车 diesel locomotive

【内热】 nèirè (名) [中医] internal heat

【内人】 nèirén (名) my wife

【内容】 nèiróng (名) content: ~不详 content unknown || ~丰富 be rich in content || ~贫乏 be poor in content || ~提要 synopsis

【内伤】 nèishāng ▶ p. 50 (名) ① (指身体损伤) internal injury ② (指身体失调) internal disorder ③ (喻) (指损坏) internal damage

【内设】 nèishè (动) install inside: 大型商场~卫生间要提高标准。 Toilets inside large shopping centres should be upgraded.

【内室】 nèishì (名) inner room

【内侍】 nèishì (名) (旧) eunuch

【内水】 nèishuǐ (名) inland waters

【内胎】 nèitāi (名) inner tube

【内廷】 nèitíng (名) inner chambers in an imperial palace

【内退】 nèituì (名) early retirement: 给一些职工安排~ arrange early retirement for some staff members

【内外】 nèiwài (名) (名) inside and outside: ~勾结 collaborate from within and without || ~夹攻 attack from both inside and outside || 国~ home and abroad ③ (副) approximately: 二十天~ about twenty days

【内外交困】 nèiwài jiāokùn (成) be beset with difficulties both at home and abroad

【内外有别】 nèiwài yǒubié (成) differentiate between insiders and the outsiders

【内务】 nèiwù (名) ① (国内事务) internal affairs: ~部 ministry of internal affairs

② (日常事务) daily tasks: 整理~ deal with one's personal matters

【内线】 nèixiǎn (名) ① (指人) mole ② (指战线) interior lines: ~作战 fight on interior lines ③ (指电话线) internal telephone connection: ~电话 house phone ④ (指关系) inside connections: 走~ make use of connections on the inside || 工资抢劫案是有~的。 The payroll theft was an inside job.

【内详】 nèixiáng (动) [written on an envelope] name and address of the sender enclosed

【内向】 nèixiàng (形) ① (针对国内) domestic-oriented: ~型企业 domestic-oriented enterprise ② (指性格) introverted: 她性格~。 She is introverted by nature.

【内销】 nèixiāo (动) sell domestically: ~商品 commodities for domestic sale || 出口转~ export goods sold on the domestic market

【内斜视】 nèixiéshì ▶ p. 50 (名) [医学] esotropia

【内心】 nèixīn (名) heart: 发自~ come from one's heart || ~的秘密 innermost secret || ~世界 inner world

【内心独白】 nèixīn dúbái (名) interior monologue

【内省】 nèixǐng (动) introspect

【内兄】 nèixiōng (名) wife's elder brother

【内秀】 nèixiù (形) intelligent but unassuming

【内需】 nèixū (名) domestic demand: 扩大~ increase domestic demand

【内延】 nèiyán (名) interior extent

【内衣】 nèiyī (名) underwear

【内因】 nèiyīn (名) [哲学] internal cause: 外因通过~起作用。 External causes become operative through internal causes.

【内应】 nèiyīng (名) (动) work from within in coordination with outside forces: 有~ have someone on the inside ③ (名) planted agent

【内忧外患】 nèiyōu-wàihuàn (成) domestic trouble and foreign invasion

【内援】 nèiyuán (名) sportsperson on the national team: 招来几名外援和~组成一支新的球队 call up a few national and international sportspeople to form a new team

【内在】 nèizài (形) ① (本身固有) inherent: ~规律 internal law || ~缺陷 inherent defect ② (不外露) closely-guarded: 感情~ feelings are closely guarded

【内在价值】 nèizài jiàzhí (名) intrinsic value

【内在美】 nèizàiměi (名) internal beauty

【内脏】 nèizàng (名) internal organs: ~器官移植 viscera transplantation

【内贼】 nèizéi (名) internal thief

【内宅】 nèizhái (名) (书) inner chambers

【内债】 nèizhài (名) internal debt

【内战】 nèizhàn (名) civil war: 引起~ cause a civil war

【内掌柜】 nèizhǎngguī (名) (口) wife of a shopkeeper

【内争】 nèizhēng (名) internal strife

【内政】 nèizhèng (名) domestic affairs: 不干涉别国~ do not interfere in other's internal affairs || ~部 ministry of the interior

【内侄】 nèizhī (名) nephew

【内侄女】 nèizhīnǚ (名) niece

【内痔】 nèizhì (名) internal haemorrhoids

【内中】 nèizhōng (名) the inside: ~的事无人知晓。 No one knows the inside information.

【内助】 nèizhù (名) (书) wife: 贤~ one's better half

【内传】 nèizhuàn (名) intimate biography

【内资】 nèizī (名) domestic capital

【内资企业】 nèizī qǐyè (名) domestically-funded enterprise

【内子】 nèizi (名) (书) my wife

## nèn

恁 nèn (代) (方) ① (那样) so: 天气~热! What a hot day! || 来了~多的人。 So many people have arrived. ② (那) that: ~时 at that time || 别走~快。 Don't walk so fast. ▶ nín

【恁地】 nèndì (代) (方) ① (如此) such: 让他别~麻烦人家! Don't let him trouble people like that! ② (如何) how come: 我的确把书放在这儿了, ~找不到? I did put my book here, how come I can't find it?

嫩 nèn (形) ① (娇嫩) delicate: ~姜 new ginger || ~肉 tender meat || ~芽 tender sprout ② ▶ p. 863 (色浅) light: ~黄, ~绿 ③ (不老练) inexperienced: 你还~了点。 You are still green. || 他干这活恐怕~了点。 I am afraid he is a bit inexperienced for such a job. ④ (指食物) tender: ~牛排 rare beef steak, tenderloin steak

【嫩白】 nènbái (形) fair and delicate

【嫩豆腐】 nèndòufu (名) soft tofu

【嫩红】 nènhóng ▶ p. 863 (形) pale-red

【嫩黄】 nènhuáng ▶ p. 863 (形) light yellow

【嫩绿】 nènlǜ ▶ p. 863 (形) light green

【嫩气】 nènnqì (名) delicate looks

【嫩手】 nènnshǒu (名) green hand

【嫩枝】 nènnzhī (名) shoot

## néng

能 néng (名) ① (能力) ability: ▶ 逞~, 才~, 技~, 无~ ② (能量) energy: ▶ 电~, 热~, 势~, 原子~

③ (形) able: ▶ ~人, ~者多劳

④ (动) ① (有能力) be able to: ~读会写 can read and write ▶ ~歌善舞, ~说会道 ② (可能) [expressing possibility] can: 他~答应吗? Would he agree? || 我相信~找到一种解决办法。 I am confident that a solution can be found. ③ (表请求) [used in questions as a polite way of asking someone to do sth.] could: 你~帮我个忙吗? Could you do me a favour? || 你~告诉我几点了吗? Can you tell me the time? ④ (表允许) [expressing permission] may: 这里~抽烟吗? Can I smoke here? ▶ Nài

【能吹会拍】 néngchuī-huīpāi (成) be good at bragging and toadying

【能动】 néngdòng (形) active: ~作用 dynamic role

【能动性】 néngdòngxìng (名) initiative: 调动大家的主观~ rouse everybody's spirits

【能干】 nénggān (形) capable: 他是个非常~的经理。 He is a highly competent manager.

【能歌善舞】 nénggē-shànwǔ (成) be good at singing and dancing

【能工巧匠】 nénggōng-qiǎojiàng (成) skilled craftsman

inside the cave. ②《喻》(毫无希望) utterly hopeless: 他们把那几的情况说成~。They painted a very dark picture of the situation there. ③《喻》(一无所知) be in the dark: 这个问题在我的心中还是~。I am still completely in the dark about the matter.

【漆画】qīhuà《名》lacquer painting

【漆匠】qījiàng《名》lacquerware worker

【漆皮】qīpí《名》coat of paint

【漆片】qīpiàn《名》shellac

【漆器】qīqì《名》lacquerware: 上等~ choice works in lacquer

【漆树】qīshù《名》lacquer tree

蹊 qī

▶ xī

【蹊跷】qīqiāo《形》fishy: 这件事有点~。There is something funny about it.

曝 qī

【曝】qī《动》①(用沙土吸水分) absorb water with sand, etc. ②(将要变干) become dry

qí

齐

Qí《名》Qí[surname]

齐(齊) qí

【齐】qí《形》①(整齐) neat: 靠左边对~ be flush on the left || 队伍排得很~。The procession lined up in a neat line. ▶ 参差不齐 ②(一致) identical: 只要心~, 就没有办不成的事。When we act with one mind, there is nothing we cannot do. ③(完备) ready: 客人都来~了。All the guests have arrived. || 钱都凑~了。We have pooled enough money. ▶ ~备, ~全

【齐】qí《动》be level with: ~膝深的水 kneedeep water || 向日葵都~房檐了。The sunflowers have reached the height of the eaves.

【齐】qí《副》simultaneously: 百鸟~鸣 all birds sing in chorus || 男女老幼~动手。Men and women, old and young, all pitched in. ▶ 百花~放, 并驾~驱

【齐】qí《介》along a line: ~根剪断 cut right down to the roots || ~着边儿划一条线 draw a line along the edge

齐(齊) qí

Qí《名》①(指国名) Qi [state in the Zhou Dynasty] ②(南朝之一) Qi Dynasty ③(北朝齐) Northern Qi Dynasty ④(指国号) Qí [title of a regime established towards the end of the Tang Dynasty]

▶ jī

【齐备】qíbèi《形》complete: 工具~ have complete set of tools || 货色~ goods of every conceivable variety available

【齐步走】qíbùzǒu《动》[军事] quick march: ~! Quick, march!

【齐唱】qíchàng《名》singing in unison ②《动》sing in unison: ~一首歌 sing a song in unison

【齐楚】qíchǔ《形》《书》①(整齐) neat and smart: 衣冠~ be smartly dressed ②(齐全) complete: 准备~ get everything ready

【齐东野语】Qidōng-yěyǔ《成》just talk: ~, 不足为信。It is only hearsay and not to be taken seriously.

【齐集】qíjí《动》assemble: ~一堂 assemble under the same roof || 各国朋友~北

京。Friends from all nations gathered in Beijing.

【齐民】qímín《名》《书》common people

【齐名】qímíng《动》be equally famous: 他可与一流作家~。He ranks among the best class of writers.

【齐全】qíquán《形》complete: 功能~ have complete functionality || 设备~ have all the necessary equipment || 装备~ be fully equipped

【齐声】qíshēng《副》in chorus: ~欢呼 cheer in unison || ~朗读 read in chorus

【齐刷刷】qíshuāshuā《形》uniform: 十个姑娘~一般高。The ten girls are of the same height.

【齐头并进】qítóu-bìngjìn《成》keep in step: 几项工作~ do several jobs all at once

【齐心】qíxīn《形》be of one mind: 只要大家~, 事情就好办。So long as we are of one mind, we are sure to accomplish what we are out to do.

【齐心协力】qíxīn-xiéli《成》make concerted efforts: 只要~, 就没有办不成的事。When we act with one mind, there is nothing we can't do.

【齐整】qízhěng《形》neat: 公路两旁的白杨树长得很~。The road is flanked with neat rows of poplars.

【齐奏】qízòu《动》play in unison

祁 qí

【祁红】qíhóng《名》keemun [a kind of black tea]

圻 qí

【圻】qí《名》《书》boundary

芪 qí

【芪】qí▶ 黄芪 huángqí

岐 qí

【岐黄】qíhuáng《名》traditional Chinese medicine: ~之术 traditional Chinese medical science

其 qí

【其】qí《代》①(那个) that: 正当~时 just the right time || 查无~事。Investigation shows that nothing of the kind has happened. ▶ 不厌~烦 ②(他的) his; (她的) her; (它的) its; (他们的) their: ~父/母 his father/mother ▶ 物尽~用, 自圆~说 ③(他) he; (她) she; (它) it; (他们) they: 不能任~自流 cannot let things slide || 劝~尽早戒烟 advise him to give up smoking as early as possible ▶ 察~言, 观~行, 出~不意 ④(虚指) [rhetorical word referring to nothing in particular] it: 忘~所以 forget all else

【其】qí《后缀》[used after an adverb]: ▶ 极~, 尤~

【其次】qícì《代》①(第二) next: 他第一个发言, ~就轮到。He spoke first, and then it was my turn. ②(次要) secondary: 内容是主要的, 形式还在~。Content comes first; what form it takes is secondary.

【其后】qíhòu《副》later

【其间】qíjiān《名》①(那中间) among them: 厕身~ occupy a place among them || ~定有缘故。There must be some reason for it. ②(指时间) time: 他出国三年, ~到过纽约和巴黎。During his three years abroad, he visited New York and Paris.

【其乐无穷】qílè-wúqióng《成》find it an infinite delight/a boundless joy (to do sth.): 与众不同, ~。Joys shared with others are more enjoyed.

漆蹊曝齐祁圻芪岐其奇 qī ▶ qí

【其貌不扬】qímào-bùyáng《成》of undistinguished appearance: 别以为他~就小看。Don't slight him just because he is unimposing in appearance.

【其实】qíshí《副》actually: ~没这个必要。As a matter of fact, it isn't necessary at all.

【其它】qítā = 其他 qítā

【其他】qítā《代》[referring to either people or things] other: 我们去了动物园, ~什么地方也没去。We went to the zoo and nowhere else.

【其余】qíyú《代》the rest: 这个包是我的随身行李, ~的是托运行李。This is my carry-on bag; all the rest is to be checked in.

【其中】qízhōng《名》among: 不知~底细 not know the ins and outs of the matter || 果园里一共有五千棵果树, ~苹果树占80%。There are altogether 5,000 trees in the orchard, of which 80% are apple trees.

奇 qí

【奇】qí《形》①(罕见) unusual: ~男子/女子 remarkable man/woman || ~松怪石 unique pine trees and strangely-shaped rocks ▶ ~耻大辱, ~迹, ~妙 ②(出人意料) unexpected: ▶ ~兵, ~袭, ~遇, 出~制胜

【奇】qí《动》surprise: ▶ 不足为~, 惊~

【奇】qí《副》extremely: ~丑 very ugly || ~痒 be terribly itchy ▶ ~缺

▶ jī

【奇案】qí'àn《名》quirky case: 侦破一桩~ solve a strange case

【奇拔】qíbá《形》《书》unique and outstanding: 山峰~ towering mountain peaks

【奇兵】qíbīng《名》ingenious military move: 出~ launch a surprise attack

【奇才】qícai《名》①(指才能) rare talent: 在数学方面有~ be exceptionally gifted at maths ②(指人才) genius: 数学~ maths prodigy || 他是语言~。He is a linguistic wonder.

【奇彩】qícǎi《名》extraordinary splendour

【奇耻大辱】qíchǐ-dàrǔ《成》burning shame: 蒙受~ be deeply disgraced

【奇峰】qíféng《名》strangely-shaped peak: ~突起 peaks towering magnificently

【奇功】qígōng《名》outstanding service: 屡建~ repeatedly perform outstanding service

【奇怪】qíguài《形》strange: ~的念头 weird idea || ~的现象 unusual phenomena ②《动》be surprising: 我们都~经理为什么要辞职。We all feel surprised at the manager's resignation.

【奇观】qíguān《名》wonder: 自然~ natural wonders || 钱塘潮是一大~。The tidal bore on the Qiantang River is indeed a spectacle.

【奇瑰】qíguī《形》singular and beautiful: ~的海景 unsurpassably magnificent seascape

【奇诡】qíguǐ《形》odd

【奇花异草】qíhuā-yìcǎo《成》exotic flowers and rare herbs

【奇幻】qíhuàn《形》①(指虚幻) fantastic: ~莫测 be too mysterious to predict ②(指变幻) kaleidoscopic: 景色~ kaleidoscopic scenes

【奇货可居】qíhuò-kējū《成》《喻》sth. that can be capitalized on

【奇技淫巧】qíjì-yínqiǎo《成》diabolic tricks and wicked craft

【奇迹】qíjì《名》miracle: 创造~ work wonders || 她~般地好起来了。She is making a miraculous recovery.

## wéi ▶ wěi 围 帏 桅 帷 惟 唯 嵬 诡 伪

心) centre on: ~中心任务安排其他工作 arrange other work around the central task  
 || 故事的情节~着两个家庭之间的矛盾展开。The plot of the story centres on the conflict between the two families.

## 围棋

A traditional Chinese board game for two players with a history, it is believed, of more than 2,000 years. The board is crossed with 19 lines, forming 361 intersections. Pieces are placed in turn on the intersections, one at a time. The aim is to encircle and wipe out one's opponent's pieces. The winner is the player who finally occupies the greatest number of positions.

【围网】wéiwǎng (名) purse seine: ~渔船 purse boat

【围魏救赵】wéiwèi-jiùzhào (成) relieve the besieged by besieging the base of the besiegers

【围堰】wéiyàn (名) coffer

【围追堵截】wéizhuīdǔjié (成) encirclement, pursuit, obstruction, and interception

【围子】wéizi (名) ① (防护墙) defensive wall surrounding a village: 土~ fortified village ② (帷子) curtain: 床~ bed curtain ③ (圩子) protective embankments surrounding low-lying fields

【围嘴儿】wéizǔi (名) bib [for baby]

【围坐】wéizuò (动) sit around: 客人们~在餐桌旁。The guests sat around the dining table.

帏 (幃) wéi (名) (古) ① (香袋) perfume bag ② = 帷 wéi

闾 (闾) wéi (名) ① (宫门) side gate of an imperial palace: ▶ 宫~ ② (科举考场) imperial examination hall: ▶ 入~

【闾墨】wéimò (名) (旧) selections from the papers of successful candidates at the imperial palace

桅 wéi (名) mast: ~顶 masthead

【桅灯】wéidēng (名) ① (航行信号) masthead light ② (马灯) barn lantern

【桅杆】wéigān (名) mast: 爬上~ climb up a mast || 把旗子升上~ run a flag up a mast

【桅樯】wéiqiāng (名) mast

唯<sup>1</sup> wéi (叹) (书) [used to answer in the affirmative] yea

唯<sup>2</sup> wéi  
 A (副) only: ~愿 only wish || ~你是问。You alone will be held responsible.

B (连) (书) but: 他学识渊博, ~不善言谈。He is learned, but taciturn.

▶ wéi  
 【唯独】wéidú (副) only: 大家都回家了, ~他还在工作。He kept on working when all the others had gone home.

【唯恐】wéikǒng (动) fear that ...: 他们低声耳语, ~别人听到。They spoke in whispers lest they should be heard.

【唯利是图】wéilì-shìtú (成) be intent on nothing but profit: ~的思想 profit-first mentality

【唯美主义】wéiměizhǔyì (名) aestheticism: ~者 aesthete

【唯命是从】wéimìng-shìcóng = 唯命是听 wéimìng-shìtīng

【唯命是听】wéimìng-shìtīng (成) comply with the exact order

【唯我独尊】wéiwǒ-dúzūn (成) be extremely conceited: ~的架势 behave in an overbearing manner

【唯物辩证法】wéiwù-biànzhèngfǎ (名) [哲学] materialist dialectics

【唯物论】wéiwùlùn (名) [哲学] materialism: ~的反映论 materialist theory of reflection || 机械~ mechanical materialism

【唯物史观】wéiwù shìguān (名) [哲学] historical materialism

【唯物主义】wéiwù zhǔyì (名) [哲学] materialism: ~者 materialist || 机械~ mechanical materialism ▶ 辩证~, 历史~

【唯心论】wéixīnlùn (名) [哲学] idealism

【唯心史观】wéixīn shìguān (名) [哲学] historical idealism

【唯心主义】wéixīn zhǔyì (名) [哲学] idealism: ~者 idealist ▶ 历史~, 主观~

【唯一】wéiyī (形) only: ~的办法 only way || ~的继承人 sole heir || ~合法的政府 sole legitimate government || 实践是检验真理的~标准。Practice is the sole criterion of truth.

【唯有】wéiyǒu A (副) only: ~他留了下来。Only he remained. B (连) only: ~努力学习, 才会取得进步。You can only make progress by studying hard.

惟<sup>1</sup> wéi = 唯<sup>2</sup> wéi

惟<sup>2</sup> wéi (动) (书) [used before a year, month or day]: ~二月既望 on the 16th of the second lunar month

惟<sup>3</sup> wéi (名) thinking

【惟独】wéidú = 唯独 wéidú

【惟恐】wéikǒng = 唯恐 wéikǒng

【惟恐天下不乱】wéikǒng tiānxià bù luàn (成) be anxious to see the world in disorder

【惟利是图】wéilì-shìtú = 唯利是图 wéilì-shìtú

【惟妙惟肖】wéimào-wéixiào (成) remarkably lifelike: 模仿得~ mimic perfectly || 这部小说中的人物形象描绘得~。The characters in the novel were very vividly depicted.

【唯命是从】wéimìng-shìcóng = 唯命是听 wéimìng-shìtīng

【唯命是听】wéimìng-shìtīng = 唯命是听 wéimìng-shìtīng

【惟其】wéiqí (连) (书) precisely because: ~不懂, 我们才要研究它。It is precisely because we don't understand it that we must work on it.

【唯我独尊】wéiwǒ-dúzūn = 唯我独尊 wéiwǒ-dúzūn

【惟一】wéiyī = 唯一 wéiyī

【唯有】wéiyǒu = 唯有 wéiyǒu

维<sup>1</sup> (維) wéi (动) ① (连接) tie up: ▶~系 ② (保持) maintain: ▶~持, ~护

维<sup>2</sup> wéi (名) [数学] dimension: 三~空间 three-dimensional space

维<sup>3</sup> wéi (名) thinking: ▶思~

【维持】wéichí (动) ① (保持) maintain: ~和平 keep the peace || ~生活 support oneself or one's family || ~生计 maintain one's livelihood || 靠水~生命 subsist on water || ~现状 maintain the status quo || ~秩序 keep order || 勉强~生活 scrape a living ② (保护) protect and support: 由

于该官员的~, 那个罪犯得以逍遥法外。Due to the official's cover-up, the criminal went unpunished.

【维和】wéihé (动) keep the peace: ~部队 peace-keeping force || ~行动 peace-keeping operation

【维护】wéihù (动) safeguard: ~国家主权 defend national sovereignty || ~消费者权益 safeguard the rights and interests of consumers || ~祖国统一 safeguard the unity of the motherland

【维纶】wéilún (名) [纺织] polyvinyl alcohol fibre

【维纳斯】Wéinásī (名) Venus

【维尼龙】wéinílóng (名) vinyon

【维尼纶】wéinilún = 维尼龙 wéinílóng

【维权】wéiquán (动) safeguard legal rights and interests: ~意识 the concept of defending legal rights and interests || ~行动 action to safeguard legal rights and interests

【维生素】wéishēngsù (名) vitamin: 富含~ be rich in vitamins || ~E/D vitamin E/D || 孕妇通常需要补充~。Pregnant women often take vitamin supplements.

【维他命】wéitāmìng (旧) = 维生素 wéishēngsù

【维吾尔语】Wéiwú'ěryǔ ▶ p. 918 (名) Uygur

【维吾尔族】Wéiwú'ěrzú (名) Uygur ethnic group

【维系】wéixì (动) maintain: ~人心 maintain popular morale || 靠血缘~ be tied by blood

【维新】wéixīn (动) reform: 日本明治~ Meiji Reform of Japan

【维修】wéixiū (动) maintain: ~房屋 maintain houses and buildings || 进行~ conduct repairs || 设备的~ upkeep of equipment

【维修费】wéixiūfèi (名) maintenance cost

【维修工】wéixiūgōng (名) maintenance worker

【维也纳】Wéiyēnà (名) Vienna: ~人 Viennese

【维族】Wéizú (简称) = 维吾尔族

帷 wéi (名) curtain

【帷幔】wéimàn = 帷幕 wéimù

【帷幕】wéimù (名) heavy curtain: 冬奥会落下~。The curtain descends on the Olympic Winter Games.

【帷幄】wéiwò (名) (书) army tent: 运筹~ devise strategies within the command tent

【帷子】wéizi (名) curtain: 床~ bed curtain

嵬 wéi (形) (书) lofty

【嵬嵬】wéiwéi (形) towering

诡 (詭) wéi (名) [鱼类] leiocassis

## wěi

伪 (偽、僞) wěi (形) ① (虚假) fake: 去~存真 eliminate the false and retain the true ▶~钞, ~造, 虚~ ② (非法) illegal: ~宗教机构 pseudo-religious organizations ▶~政权

【伪币】wěibì = 伪钞 wěichāo

【伪钞】wěichāo (名) counterfeit banknote

【伪称】wěichēng (动) claim falsely

【伪军】wěijūn (名) puppet army



**Annex 811**

United Nations Environment Programme, Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora, *Appendices I, II, and III* (5 Feb. 2015)





## Appendices I, II and III

valid from 5 February 2015

### Interpretation

1. Species included in these Appendices are referred to:
  - a) by the name of the species; or
  - b) as being all of the species included in a higher taxon or designated part thereof.
2. The abbreviation "spp." is used to denote all species of a higher taxon.
3. Other references to taxa higher than species are for the purposes of information or classification only. The common names included after the scientific names of families are for reference only. They are intended to indicate the species within the family concerned that are included in the Appendices. In most cases this is not all of the species within the family.
4. The following abbreviations are used for plant taxa below the level of species:
  - a) "ssp." is used to denote subspecies; and
  - b) "var(s)." is used to denote variety (varieties).
5. As none of the species or higher taxa of FLORA included in Appendix I is annotated to the effect that its hybrids shall be treated in accordance with the provisions of Article III of the Convention, this means that artificially propagated hybrids produced from one or more of these species or taxa may be traded with a certificate of artificial propagation, and that seeds and pollen (including pollinia), cut flowers, seedling or tissue cultures obtained *in vitro*, in solid or liquid media, transported in sterile containers of these hybrids are not subject to the provisions of the Convention.
6. The names of the countries in parentheses placed against the names of species in Appendix III are those of the Parties submitting these species for inclusion in this Appendix.
7. When a species is included in one of the Appendices, all parts and derivatives of the species are also included in the same Appendix unless the species is annotated to indicate that only specific parts and derivatives are included. The symbol # followed by a number placed against the name of a species or higher taxon included in Appendix II or III refers to a footnote that indicates the parts or derivatives of plants that are designated as 'specimens' subject to the provisions of the Convention in accordance with Article I, paragraph (b), subparagraph (iii).
8. The terms and expressions below, used in annotations in these Appendices, are defined as follows:

Extract

*Any substance obtained directly from plant material by physical or chemical means regardless of the manufacturing process. An extract may be solid (e.g. crystals, resin, fine or coarse particles), semi-solid (e.g. gums, waxes) or liquid (e.g. solutions, tinctures, oil and essential oils).*

Finished products packaged and ready for retail trade

*Products, shipped singly or in bulk, requiring no further processing, packaged, labelled for final use or the retail trade in a state fit for being sold to or used by the general public.*

Powder

*A dry, solid substance in the form of fine or coarse particles.*

Woodchips

*Wood that has been reduced to small pieces.*



Appendices		
I	II	III
<i>Gazella cuvieri</i>		<i>Gazella dorcas</i> (Algeria, Tunisia)
<i>Gazella leptoceros</i>		
<i>Hippotragus niger variani</i>	<i>Kobus leche</i>	
<i>Naemorhedus baileyi</i>		
<i>Naemorhedus caudatus</i>		
<i>Naemorhedus goral</i>		
<i>Naemorhedus griseus</i>		
<i>Nanger dama</i>		
<i>Oryx dammah</i>		
<i>Oryx leucoryx</i>		
<i>Ovis ammon hodgsonii</i>	<i>Ovis ammon</i> (Except the subspecies included in Appendix I)	
<i>Ovis ammon nigrimontana</i>		
	<i>Ovis canadensis</i> (Only the population of Mexico; no other population is included in the Appendices)	
<i>Ovis orientalis ophion</i>	<i>Ovis vignei</i> (Except the subspecies included in Appendix I)	
<i>Ovis vignei vignei</i>		
<i>Pantholops hodgsonii</i>	<i>Philantomba monticola</i>	<i>Pseudois nayaur</i> (Pakistan)
<i>Pseudoryx nghetinhensis</i>	<i>Rupicapra pyrenaica ornata</i>	
	<i>Saiga borealis</i>	
	<i>Saiga tatarica</i>	<i>Tetracerus quadricornis</i> (Nepal)
Camelidae Guanaco, vicuna		
<i>Vicugna vicugna</i> [Except the populations of: Argentina (the populations of the Provinces of Jujuy and Catamarca and the semi-captive populations of the Provinces of Jujuy, Salta, Catamarca, La Rioja and San Juan), Chile (population of the Primera Región), Ecuador (the whole population), Peru (the whole population) and the Plurinational State of Bolivia (the whole population), which are included in Appendix II]	<i>Lama guanicoe</i>	

Appendices		
I	II	III
	<b><i>Vicugna vicugna</i></b> [Only the populations of Argentina <sup>1</sup> (the populations of the Provinces of Jujuy and Catamarca and the semi-captive populations of the Provinces of Jujuy, Salta, Catamarca, La Rioja and San Juan), Chile <sup>2</sup> (population of the Primera Región), Ecuador <sup>3</sup> (the whole population), Peru <sup>4</sup> (the whole population) and the Plurinational State of Bolivia <sup>5</sup> (the whole population); all other populations are included in Appendix I]	
Cervidae Deer, guemals, muntjacs, pudus		
<b><i>Axis calamianensis</i></b> <b><i>Axis kuhlii</i></b>		<b><i>Axis porcinus</i></b> (except the subspecies included in Appendix I) (Pakistan)
<b><i>Axis porcinus annamiticus</i></b> <b><i>Blastocerus dichotomus</i></b>	<b><i>Cervus elaphus bactrianus</i></b>	

<sup>1</sup> Population of Argentina (listed in Appendix II):

For the exclusive purpose of allowing international trade in wool sheared from live vicuñas, in cloth, and in derived manufactured products and other handicraft artefacts. The reverse side of the cloth must bear the logotype adopted by the range States of the species, which are signatories to the *Convenio para la Conservación y Manejo de la Vicuña*, and the selvages the words 'VICUÑA-ARGENTINA'. Other products must bear a label including the logotype and the designation 'VICUÑA-ARGENTINA-ARTESANÍA'. All other specimens shall be deemed to be specimens of species included in Appendix I and the trade in them shall be regulated accordingly.

<sup>2</sup> Population of Chile (listed in Appendix II):

For the exclusive purpose of allowing international trade in wool sheared from live vicuñas, and in cloth and items made thereof, including luxury handicrafts and knitted articles. The reverse side of the cloth must bear the logotype adopted by the range States of the species, which are signatories to the *Convenio para la Conservación y Manejo de la Vicuña*, and the selvages the words 'VICUÑA-CHILE'. Other products must bear a label including the logotype and the designation 'VICUÑA-CHILE-ARTESANÍA'. All other specimens shall be deemed to be specimens of species included in Appendix I and the trade in them shall be regulated accordingly.

<sup>3</sup> Population of Ecuador (listed in Appendix II):

For the exclusive purpose of allowing international trade in wool sheared from live vicuñas and in cloth and items made thereof, including luxury handicrafts and knitted articles. The reverse side of the cloth must bear the logotype adopted by the range States of the species, which are signatories to the *Convenio para la Conservación y Manejo de la Vicuña*, and the selvages the words 'VICUÑA ECUADOR'. Other products must bear a label including the logotype and the designation 'VICUÑA ECUADOR-ARTESANÍA'. All other specimens shall be deemed to be specimens of species included in Appendix I and the trade in them shall be regulated accordingly.

<sup>4</sup> Population of Peru (listed in Appendix II):

For the exclusive purpose of allowing international trade in wool sheared from live vicuñas and in the stock extant at the time of the ninth meeting of the Conference of the Parties (November 1994) of 3249 kg of wool, and in cloth and items made thereof, including luxury handicrafts and knitted articles. The reverse side of the cloth must bear the logotype adopted by the range States of the species, which are signatories to the *Convenio para la Conservación y Manejo de la Vicuña*, and the selvages the words 'VICUÑA-PERÚ'. Other products must bear a label including the logotype and the designation 'VICUÑA-PERÚ-ARTESANÍA'. All other specimens shall be deemed to be specimens of species included in Appendix I and the trade in them shall be regulated accordingly.

<sup>5</sup> Population of the Plurinational State of Bolivia (listed in Appendix II):

For the exclusive purpose of allowing international trade in wool sheared from live vicuñas, and in cloth and items made thereof, including luxury handicrafts and knitted articles. The reverse side of the cloth must bear the logotype adopted by the range States of the species, which are signatories to the *Convenio para la Conservación y Manejo de la Vicuña*, and the selvages the words 'VICUÑA-BOLIVIA'. Other products must bear a label including the logotype and the designation 'VICUÑA-BOLIVIA-ARTESANÍA'. All other specimens shall be deemed to be specimens of species included in Appendix I and the trade in them shall be regulated accordingly.

Appendices		
I	II	III
<p><i>Cervus elaphus hanglu</i> <i>Dama dama mesopotamica</i> <i>Hippocamelus</i> spp.</p> <p><i>Muntiacus crinifrons</i> <i>Muntiacus vuquangensis</i></p> <p><i>Ozotoceros bezoarticus</i></p> <p><i>Pudu puda</i> <i>Rucervus duvaucelii</i> <i>Rucervus eldii</i></p>	<p><i>Pudu mephistophiles</i></p>	<p><i>Cervus elaphus barbarus</i> (Algeria, Tunisia)</p> <p><i>Mazama temama cerasina</i> (Guatemala)</p> <p><i>Odocoileus virginianus mayensis</i> (Guatemala)</p>
Hippopotamidae Hippopotamuses		
	<p><i>Hexaprotodon liberiensis</i> <i>Hippopotamus amphibius</i></p>	
Moschidae Musk deer		
<p><i>Moschus</i> spp. (Only the populations of Afghanistan, Bhutan, India, Myanmar, Nepal and Pakistan; all other populations are included in Appendix II)</p>	<p><i>Moschus</i> spp. (Except the populations of Afghanistan, Bhutan, India, Myanmar, Nepal and Pakistan, which are included in Appendix I)</p>	
Suidae Babirusa, pygmy hog		
<p><i>Babyrousa babyrussa</i> <i>Babyrousa bolabatuensis</i> <i>Babyrousa celebensis</i> <i>Babyrousa togeanensis</i> <i>Sus salvanius</i></p>		
Tayassuidae Peccaries		
<p><i>Catagonus wagneri</i></p>	<p><i>Tayassuidae</i> spp. (Except the species included in Appendix I and the populations of <i>Pecari tajacu</i> of Mexico and the United States of America, which are not included in the Appendices)</p>	
CARNIVORA		
Ailuridae Red panda		
<p><i>Ailurus fulgens</i></p>		
Canidae Bush dog, foxes, wolves		
		<p><i>Canis aureus</i> (India)</p>

Appendices		
I	II	III
<p><b>Canis lupus</b> (Only the populations of Bhutan, India, Nepal and Pakistan; all other populations are included in Appendix II. Excludes the domesticated form and the dingo which are referenced as <i>Canis lupus familiaris</i> and <i>Canis lupus dingo</i>)</p> <p><b>Speothos venaticus</b></p>	<p><b>Canis lupus</b> (Except the populations of Bhutan, India, Nepal and Pakistan, which are included in Appendix I. Excludes the domesticated form and the dingo which are referenced as <i>Canis lupus familiaris</i> and <i>Canis lupus dingo</i>)</p> <p><b>Cerdocyon thous</b>  <b>Chrysocyon brachyurus</b>  <b>Cuon alpinus</b>  <b>Lycalopex culpaeus</b>  <b>Lycalopex fulvipes</b>  <b>Lycalopex griseus</b>  <b>Lycalopex gymnocercus</b></p> <p><b>Vulpes cana</b></p> <p><b>Vulpes zerda</b></p>	<p><b>Vulpes bengalensis</b> (India)</p> <p><b>Vulpes vulpes griffithi</b> (India)  <b>Vulpes vulpes montana</b> (India)  <b>Vulpes vulpes pusilla</b> (India)</p>
Eupleridae Fossa, falanouc, Malagasy civet		
	<p><b>Cryptoprocta ferox</b>  <b>Eupleres goudotii</b>  <b>Fossa fossana</b></p>	
Felidae Cats		
<p><b>Acinonyx jubatus</b> (Annual export quotas for live specimens and hunting trophies are granted as follows: Botswana: 5; Namibia: 150; Zimbabwe: 50. The trade in such specimens is subject to the provisions of Article III of the Convention)</p> <p><b>Caracal caracal</b> (Only the population of Asia; all other populations are included in Appendix II)</p> <p><b>Catopuma temminckii</b>  <b>Felis nigripes</b>  <b>Leopardus geoffroyi</b></p>	<p><b>Felidae spp.</b> (Except the species included in Appendix I. Specimens of the domesticated form are not subject to the provisions of the Convention)</p>	

Appendices		
I	II	III
<p><i>Leopardus jacobitus</i></p> <p><i>Leopardus pardalis</i></p> <p><i>Leopardus tigrinus</i></p> <p><i>Leopardus wiedii</i></p> <p><i>Lynx pardinus</i></p> <p><i>Neofelis nebulosa</i></p> <p><i>Panthera leo persica</i></p> <p><i>Panthera onca</i></p> <p><i>Panthera pardus</i></p> <p><i>Panthera tigris</i></p> <p><i>Pardofelis marmorata</i></p> <p><i>Prionailurus bengalensis</i> <i>bengalensis</i> (Only the populations of Bangladesh, India and Thailand; all other populations are included in Appendix II)</p> <p><i>Prionailurus planiceps</i></p> <p><i>Prionailurus rubiginosus</i> (Only the population of India; all other populations are included in Appendix II)</p> <p><i>Puma concolor coryi</i></p> <p><i>Puma concolor costaricensis</i></p> <p><i>Puma concolor cougar</i></p> <p><i>Puma yagouaroundi</i> (Only the populations of Central and North America; all other populations are included in Appendix II)</p> <p><i>Uncia uncia</i></p>		
Herpestidae Mongooses		<p><i>Herpestes edwardsi</i> (India, Pakistan)</p> <p><i>Herpestes fuscus</i> (India)</p> <p><i>Herpestes javanicus</i> (Pakistan)</p> <p><i>Herpestes javanicus auropunctatus</i> (India)</p> <p><i>Herpestes smithii</i> (India)</p> <p><i>Herpestes urva</i> (India)</p> <p><i>Herpestes vitticollis</i> (India)</p>
Hyaenidae Aardwolf, hyaenas		<p><i>Hyaena hyaena</i> (Pakistan)</p> <p><i>Proteles cristata</i> (Botswana)</p>
Mephitidae Hog-nosed skunk	<i>Conepatus humboldtii</i>	
Mustelidae Badgers, martens, weasels, etc.		
Lutrinae Otters	Lutrinae spp. (Except the species included in Appendix I)	
<p><i>Aonyx capensis microdon</i> (Only the populations of Cameroon and Nigeria; all other populations are included in Appendix II)</p> <p><i>Enhydra lutris nereis</i></p>		

Appendices		
I	II	III
<p><i>Lontra felina</i>  <i>Lontra longicaudis</i>  <i>Lontra provocax</i>  <i>Lutra lutra</i>  <i>Lutra nippon</i>  <i>Pteronura brasiliensis</i></p>		
Mustelinae Grisons, honey badger, martens, tayra, weasels		
		<p><i>Eira barbara</i> (Honduras)  <i>Galictis vittata</i> (Costa Rica)  <i>Martes flavigula</i> (India)  <i>Martes foina intermedia</i> (India)  <i>Martes gwatkinsii</i> (India)  <i>Mellivora capensis</i> (Botswana)  <i>Mustela altaica</i> (India)  <i>Mustela erminea ferghanae</i> (India)  <i>Mustela kathiah</i> (India)  <i>Mustela sibirica</i> (India)</p>
<i>Mustela nigripes</i>		
Odobenidae Walrus		
		<i>Odobenus rosmarus</i> (Canada)
Otariidae Fur seals, sealions		
	<i>Arctocephalus</i> spp. (Except the species included in Appendix I)	
<i>Arctocephalus townsendi</i>		
Phocidae Seals		
	<i>Mirounga leonina</i>	
<i>Monachus</i> spp.		
Procyonidae Coatis, kinkajou, olingos		
		<p><i>Bassaricyon gabbii</i> (Costa Rica)  <i>Bassariscus sumichrasti</i> (Costa Rica)  <i>Nasua narica</i> (Honduras)  <i>Nasua nasua solitaria</i> (Uruguay)  <i>Potos flavus</i> (Honduras)</p>
Ursidae Bears, giant panda		
	<i>Ursidae</i> spp. (Except the species included in Appendix I)	
<p><i>Ailuropoda melanoleuca</i>  <i>Helarctos malayanus</i>  <i>Melursus ursinus</i>  <i>Tremarctos ornatus</i>  <i>Ursus arctos</i> (Only the populations of Bhutan, China, Mexico and Mongolia; all other populations are included in Appendix II)  <i>Ursus arctos isabellinus</i>  <i>Ursus thibetanus</i></p>		
Viverridae Binturong, civets, linsangs, otter-civet, palm civets		
		<p><i>Arctictis binturong</i> (India)  <i>Civettictis civetta</i> (Botswana)</p>

Appendices		
I	II	III
<i>Prionodon pardicolor</i>	<i>Cynogale bennettii</i> <i>Hemigalus derbyanus</i>  <i>Prionodon linsang</i>	<i>Paguma larvata</i> (India) <i>Paradoxurus hermaphroditus</i> (India) <i>Paradoxurus jerdoni</i> (India)  <i>Viverra civettina</i> (India) <i>Viverra zibetha</i> (India) <i>Viverricula indica</i> (India)
CETACEA Dolphins, porpoises, whales		
	CETACEA spp. (Except the species included in Appendix I. A zero annual export quota has been established for live specimens from the Black Sea population of <i>Tursiops truncatus</i> removed from the wild and traded for primarily commercial purposes)	
Balaenidae Bowhead whale, right whales		
<i>Balaena mysticetus</i> <i>Eubalaena</i> spp.		
Balaenopteridae Humpback whale, rorquals		
<i>Balaenoptera acutorostrata</i> (Except the population of West Greenland, which is included in Appendix II) <i>Balaenoptera bonaerensis</i> <i>Balaenoptera borealis</i> <i>Balaenoptera edeni</i> <i>Balaenoptera musculus</i> <i>Balaenoptera omurai</i> <i>Balaenoptera physalus</i> <i>Megaptera novaeangliae</i>		
Delphinidae Dolphins		
<i>Orcaella brevirostris</i> <i>Orcaella heinsohni</i> <i>Sotalia</i> spp. <i>Sousa</i> spp.		
Eschrichtiidae Grey whale		
<i>Eschrichtius robustus</i>		
Iniidae River dolphins		
<i>Lipotes vexillifer</i>		
Neobalaenidae Pygmy right whale		
<i>Caperea marginata</i>		
Phocoenidae Porpoises		
<i>Neophocaena phocaenoides</i> <i>Phocoena sinus</i>		
Physeteridae Sperm whales		
<i>Physeter macrocephalus</i>		

Appendices		
I	II	III
Platanistidae River dolphins		
<b><i>Platanista</i> spp.</b>		
Ziphiidae Beaked whales, bottle-nosed whales		
<b><i>Berardius</i> spp.</b> <b><i>Hyperoodon</i> spp.</b>		
CHIROPTERA		
Phyllostomidae Broad-nosed bat		
		<b><i>Platyrrhinus lineatus</i></b> (Uruguay)
Pteropodidae Fruit bats, flying foxes		
<b><i>Acerodon jubatus</i></b>	<b><i>Acerodon</i> spp.</b> (Except the species included in Appendix I)	
<b><i>Pteropus insularis</i></b> <b><i>Pteropus loochoensis</i></b> <b><i>Pteropus mariannus</i></b> <b><i>Pteropus molossinus</i></b> <b><i>Pteropus pelewensis</i></b> <b><i>Pteropus pilosus</i></b> <b><i>Pteropus samoensis</i></b> <b><i>Pteropus tonganus</i></b> <b><i>Pteropus ualanus</i></b> <b><i>Pteropus yapensis</i></b>	<b><i>Pteropus</i> spp.</b> (Except <i>Pteropus brunneus</i> and the species included in Appendix I)	
CINGULATA		
Dasypodidae Armadillos		
<b><i>Priodontes maximus</i></b>	<b><i>Chaetophractus nationi</i></b> (A zero annual export quota has been established. All specimens shall be deemed to be specimens of species included in Appendix I and the trade in them shall be regulated accordingly)	<b><i>Cabassous centralis</i></b> (Costa Rica) <b><i>Cabassous tatouay</i></b> (Uruguay)
DASYUROMORPHIA		
Dasyuridae Dunnarts		
<b><i>Sminthopsis longicaudata</i></b> <b><i>Sminthopsis psammophila</i></b>		
DIPROTODONTIA		
Macropodidae Kangaroos, wallabies		
<b><i>Lagorchestes hirsutus</i></b> <b><i>Lagostrophus fasciatus</i></b> <b><i>Onychogalea fraenata</i></b>	<b><i>Dendrolagus inustus</i></b> <b><i>Dendrolagus ursinus</i></b>	
Phalangeridae Cuscuses		
	<b><i>Phalanger intercastellanus</i></b> <b><i>Phalanger mimicus</i></b>	

Appendices		
I	II	III
	<p><i>Phalanger orientalis</i>  <i>Spilocuscus kraemeri</i>  <i>Spilocuscus maculatus</i>  <i>Spilocuscus papuensis</i></p>	
Potoroidae Rat-kangaroos		
<b><i>Bettongia</i> spp.</b>		
Vombatidae Northern hairy-nosed wombat		
<b><i>Lasiorhinus krefftii</i></b>		
LAGOMORPHA		
Leporidae Hispid hare, volcano rabbit		
<b><i>Caprolagus hispidus</i></b> <b><i>Romerolagus diazi</i></b>		
MONOTREMATA		
Tachyglossidae Echidnas, spiny anteaters		
<b><i>Zaglossus</i> spp.</b>		
PERAMELEMORPHIA		
Peramelidae Bandicoots, echymiperas		
<b><i>Perameles bougainville</i></b>		
Thylacomyidae Bilbies		
<b><i>Macrotis lagotis</i></b>		
PERISSODACTYLA		
Equidae Horses, wild asses, zebras		
<b><i>Equus africanus</i></b> (Excludes the domesticated form, which is referenced as <i>Equus asinus</i> , and is not subject to the provisions of the Convention) <b><i>Equus grevyi</i></b>	<b><i>Equus hemionus</i></b> (Except the subspecies included in Appendix I)	
<b><i>Equus hemionus hemionus</i></b> <b><i>Equus hemionus khur</i></b>	<b><i>Equus kiang</i></b>	
<b><i>Equus przewalskii</i></b>	<b><i>Equus zebra hartmannae</i></b>	
<b><i>Equus zebra zebra</i></b>		
Rhinocerotidae Rhinoceroses		
<b>Rhinocerotidae spp.</b> (Except the subspecies included in Appendix II)	<b><i>Ceratotherium simum simum</i></b> (Only the populations of South Africa and Swaziland; all other populations are included in Appendix I. For the exclusive purpose of allowing international trade in live animals to appropriate and acceptable destinations and hunting trophies. All other specimens shall be deemed to be specimens of species included in Appendix I and the trade in them shall be regulated accordingly)	

Appendices		
I	II	III
Tapiridae Tapirs		
<b>Tapiridae spp.</b> (Except the species included in Appendix II)	<b><i>Tapirus terrestris</i></b>	
PHOLIDOTA		
Manidae Pangolins		
	<b><i>Manis spp.</i></b> (A zero annual export quota has been established for <i>Manis crassicaudata</i> , <i>M. culionensis</i> , <i>M. javanica</i> and <i>M. pentadactyla</i> for specimens removed from the wild and traded for primarily commercial purposes)	
PILOSA		
Bradypodidae Three-toed sloth		
	<b><i>Bradypus pygmaeus</i></b>	
	<b><i>Bradypus variegatus</i></b>	
Megalonychidae Two-toed sloth		
		<b><i>Choloepus hoffmanni</i></b> (Costa Rica)
Myrmecophagidae American anteaters		
	<b><i>Myrmecophaga tridactyla</i></b>	<b><i>Tamandua mexicana</i></b> (Guatemala)
PRIMATES Apes, monkeys		
	<b>PRIMATES spp.</b> (Except the species included in Appendix I)	
Atelidae Howler and prehensile-tailed monkeys		
<b><i>Alouatta coibensis</i></b> <b><i>Alouatta palliata</i></b> <b><i>Alouatta pigra</i></b> <b><i>Ateles geoffroyi frontatus</i></b> <b><i>Ateles geoffroyi panamensis</i></b> <b><i>Brachyteles arachnoides</i></b> <b><i>Brachyteles hypoxanthus</i></b> <b><i>Oreonax flavicauda</i></b>		
Cebidae New World monkeys		
<b><i>Callimico goeldii</i></b> <b><i>Callithrix aurita</i></b> <b><i>Callithrix flaviceps</i></b> <b><i>Leontopithecus spp.</i></b> <b><i>Saguinus bicolor</i></b> <b><i>Saguinus geoffroyi</i></b> <b><i>Saguinus leucopus</i></b> <b><i>Saguinus martinsi</i></b> <b><i>Saguinus oedipus</i></b> <b><i>Saimiri oerstedii</i></b>		
Cercopithecidae Old World monkeys		
<b><i>Cercocebus galeritus</i></b> <b><i>Cercopithecus diana</i></b> <b><i>Cercopithecus roloway</i></b> <b><i>Macaca silenus</i></b>		

Appendices		
I	II	III
<i>Mandrillus leucophaeus</i> <i>Mandrillus sphinx</i> <i>Nasalis larvatus</i> <i>Ptilocolobus kirkii</i> <i>Ptilocolobus rufomitratu</i> <i>Presbytis potenziani</i> <i>Pygathrix</i> spp. <i>Rhinopithecus</i> spp. <i>Semnopithecus ajax</i> <i>Semnopithecus dussumieri</i> <i>Semnopithecus entellus</i> <i>Semnopithecus hector</i> <i>Semnopithecus hypoleucos</i> <i>Semnopithecus priam</i> <i>Semnopithecus schistaceus</i> <i>Simias concolor</i> <i>Trachypithecus geei</i> <i>Trachypithecus pileatus</i> <i>Trachypithecus shortridgei</i>		
Cheirogaleidae Dwarf lemurs		
<b>Cheirogaleidae</b> spp.		
Daubentoniidae Aye-aye		
<b>Daubentonia</b> <i>madagascariensis</i>		
Hominidae Chimpanzees, gorilla, orang-utan		
<b>Gorilla</b> <i>beringei</i>		
<b>Gorilla</b> <i>gorilla</i>		
<b>Pan</b> spp.		
<b>Pongo</b> <i>abelii</i>		
<b>Pongo</b> <i>pygmaeus</i>		
Hylobatidae Gibbons		
<b>Hylobatidae</b> spp.		
Indriidae Avahi, indris, sifakas, woolly lemurs		
<b>Indriidae</b> spp.		
Lemuridae Large lemurs		
<b>Lemuridae</b> spp.		
Lepilemuridae Sportive lemurs		
<b>Lepilemuridae</b> spp.		
Lorisidae Lorises		
<b>Nycticebus</b> spp.		
Pitheciidae Sakis and uakaris		
<b>Cacajao</b> spp.		
<b>Chiropotes</b> <i>albinasus</i>		
PROBOSCIDEA		
Elephantidae Elephants		
<b>Elephas</b> <i>maximus</i>		
<b>Loxodonta</b> <i>africana</i> (Except the populations of Botswana, Namibia, South Africa and Zimbabwe, which are included in Appendix II)		

Appendices		
I	II	III
	<b><i>Loxodonta africana</i></b> <sup>6</sup> (Only the populations of Botswana, Namibia, South Africa and Zimbabwe; all other populations are included in Appendix I)	
RODENTIA		
Chinchillidae Chinchillas		
<b><i>Chinchilla</i> spp.</b> (Specimens of the domesticated form are not subject to the provisions of the Convention)		
Cuniculidae Paca		
		<b><i>Cuniculus paca</i></b> (Honduras)
Dasyproctidae Agouti		
		<b><i>Dasyprocta punctata</i></b> (Honduras)
Erethizontidae New World porcupines		
		<b><i>Sphiggurus mexicanus</i></b> (Honduras) <b><i>Sphiggurus spinosus</i></b> (Uruguay)
Muridae Mice, rats		
<b><i>Leporillus conditor</i></b> <b><i>Pseudomys fieldi praeconis</i></b> <b><i>Xeromys myoides</i></b> <b><i>Zyzomys pedunculatus</i></b>		

<sup>6</sup> Populations of Botswana, Namibia, South Africa and Zimbabwe (listed in Appendix II):

For the exclusive purpose of allowing:

- a) trade in hunting trophies for non-commercial purposes;
- b) trade in live animals to appropriate and acceptable destinations, as defined in Resolution Conf. 11.20, for Botswana and Zimbabwe and for *in situ* conservation programmes for Namibia and South Africa;
- c) trade in hides;
- d) trade in hair;
- e) trade in leather goods for commercial or non-commercial purposes for Botswana, Namibia and South Africa and for non-commercial purposes for Zimbabwe;
- f) trade in individually marked and certified ekipas incorporated in finished jewellery for non-commercial purposes for Namibia and ivory carvings for non-commercial purposes for Zimbabwe;
- g) trade in registered raw ivory (for Botswana, Namibia, South Africa and Zimbabwe, whole tusks and pieces) subject to the following:
  - i) only registered government-owned stocks, originating in the State (excluding seized ivory and ivory of unknown origin);
  - ii) only to trading partners that have been verified by the Secretariat, in consultation with the Standing Committee, to have sufficient national legislation and domestic trade controls to ensure that the imported ivory will not be re-exported and will be managed in accordance with all requirements of Resolution Conf. 10.10 (Rev. CoP16) concerning domestic manufacturing and trade;
  - iii) not before the Secretariat has verified the prospective importing countries and the registered government-owned stocks;
  - iv) raw ivory pursuant to the conditional sale of registered government-owned ivory stocks agreed at CoP12, which are 20,000 kg (Botswana), 10,000 kg (Namibia) and 30,000 kg (South Africa);
  - v) in addition to the quantities agreed at CoP12, government-owned ivory from Botswana, Namibia, South Africa and Zimbabwe registered by 31 January 2007 and verified by the Secretariat may be traded and despatched, with the ivory in paragraph g) iv) above, in a single sale per destination under strict supervision of the Secretariat;
  - vi) the proceeds of the trade are used exclusively for elephant conservation and community conservation and development programmes within or adjacent to the elephant range; and
  - vii) the additional quantities specified in paragraph g) v) above shall be traded only after the Standing Committee has agreed that the above conditions have been met; and
- h) no further proposals to allow trade in elephant ivory from populations already in Appendix II shall be submitted to the Conference of the Parties for the period from CoP14 and ending nine years from the date of the single sale of ivory that is to take place in accordance with provisions in paragraphs g) i), g) ii), g) iii), g) vi) and g) vii). In addition such further proposals shall be dealt with in accordance with Decisions 16.55 and 14.78 (Rev. CoP16).

On a proposal from the Secretariat, the Standing Committee can decide to cause this trade to cease partially or completely in the event of non-compliance by exporting or importing countries, or in the case of proven detrimental impacts of the trade on other elephant populations.

All other specimens shall be deemed to be specimens of species included in Appendix I and the trade in them shall be regulated accordingly.

Appendices		
I	II	III
Sciuridae Ground squirrels, tree squirrels		
<i>Cynomys mexicanus</i>	<i>Ratufa</i> spp.	<i>Marmota caudata</i> (India) <i>Marmota himalayana</i> (India) <i>Sciurus deppei</i> (Costa Rica)
SCANDENTIA Tree shrews		
	SCANDENTIA spp.	
SIRENIA		
Dugongidae Dugong		
<i>Dugong dugon</i>		
Trichechidae Manatees		
<i>Trichechus inunguis</i> <i>Trichechus manatus</i> <i>Trichechus senegalensis</i>		
<b>CLASS AVES (BIRDS)</b>		
ANSERIFORMES		
Anatidae Ducks, geese, swans, etc.		
<i>Anas aucklandica</i>  <i>Anas chlorotis</i>  <i>Anas laysanensis</i> <i>Anas nesiotis</i> <i>Asarcornis scutulata</i> <i>Branta canadensis leucopareia</i>  <i>Branta sandvicensis</i>          <i>Rhodonessa caryophyllacea</i> (Possibly extinct)	<i>Anas bernieri</i>  <i>Anas formosa</i>     <i>Branta ruficollis</i>   <i>Coscoroba coscoroba</i> <i>Cygnus melancoryphus</i> <i>Dendrocygna arborea</i>     <i>Oxyura leucocephala</i>   <i>Sarkidiornis melanotos</i>	<i>Cairina moschata</i> (Honduras)       <i>Dendrocygna autumnalis</i> (Honduras) <i>Dendrocygna bicolor</i> (Honduras)
APODIFORMES		
Trochilidae Hummingbirds		
	Trochilidae spp. (Except the species included in Appendix I)	
<i>Glaucis dohrnii</i>		
CHARADRIIFORMES		
Burhinidae Thick-knee		
		<i>Burhinus bistriatus</i> (Guatemala)
Laridae Gull		
<i>Larus relictus</i>		

Appendices		
I	II	III
Scolopacidae Curlews, greenshanks		
<i>Numenius borealis</i> <i>Numenius tenuirostris</i> <i>Tringa guttifer</i>		
CICONIIFORMES		
Balaenicipitidae Shoebill, whale-headed stork		
	<i>Balaeniceps rex</i>	
Ciconiidae Storks		
<i>Ciconia boyciana</i>  <i>Jabiru mycteria</i> <i>Mycteria cinerea</i>	<i>Ciconia nigra</i>	
Phoenicopteridae Flamingos		
	Phoenicopteridae spp.	
Threskiornithidae Ibises, spoonbills		
<i>Geronticus eremita</i> <i>Nipponia nippon</i>	<i>Eudocimus ruber</i> <i>Geronticus calvus</i>  <i>Platalea leucorodia</i>	
COLUMBIFORMES		
Columbidae Doves, pigeons		
<i>Caloenas nicobarica</i> <i>Ducula mindorensis</i>	<i>Gallicolumba luzonica</i> <i>Goura</i> spp.	<i>Nesoenas mayeri</i> (Mauritius)
CORACIIFORMES		
Bucerotidae Hornbills		
<i>Aceros nipalensis</i>  <i>Buceros bicornis</i>  <i>Rhinoplax vigil</i>  <i>Rhyticeros subruficollis</i>	<i>Aceros</i> spp. (Except the species included in Appendix I)  <i>Anorrhinus</i> spp. <i>Anthracoceros</i> spp. <i>Berenicornis</i> spp. <i>Buceros</i> spp. (Except the species included in Appendix I)  <i>Penelopides</i> spp.  <i>Rhyticeros</i> spp. (Except the species included in Appendix I)	
CUCULIFORMES		
Musophagidae Turacos		
	<i>Tauraco</i> spp.	

Appendices		
I	II	III
FALCONIFORMES Eagles, falcons, hawks, vultures		
	FALCONIFORMES spp. (Except <i>Caracara lutosa</i> and the species of the family Cathartidae, which are not included in the Appendices; and the species included in Appendices I and III)	
Accipitridae Hawks, eagles		
<i>Aquila adalberti</i> <i>Aquila heliaca</i> <i>Chondrohierax uncinatus wilsonii</i> <i>Haliaeetus albicilla</i> <i>Harpia harpyja</i> <i>Pithecophaga jefferyi</i>		
Cathartidae New World vultures		
<i>Gymnogyps californianus</i>  <i>Vultur gryphus</i>		<i>Sarcoramphus papa</i> (Honduras)
Falconidae Falcons		
<i>Falco araeus</i> <i>Falco jugger</i> <i>Falco newtoni</i> (Only the population of Seychelles) <i>Falco pelegrinoides</i> <i>Falco peregrinus</i> <i>Falco punctatus</i> <i>Falco rusticolus</i>		
GALLIFORMES		
Cracidae Chachalacas, curassows, guans		
<i>Crax blumenbachii</i>  <i>Mitu mitu</i> <i>Oreophasis derbianus</i>  <i>Penelope albipennis</i>  <i>Pipile jacutinga</i> <i>Pipile pipile</i>		<i>Crax alberti</i> (Colombia)  <i>Crax daubentoni</i> (Colombia) <i>Crax globulosa</i> (Colombia) <i>Crax rubra</i> (Colombia, Costa Rica, Guatemala, Honduras)  <i>Ortalis vetula</i> (Guatemala, Honduras) <i>Pauxi pauxi</i> (Colombia)  <i>Penelope purpurascens</i> (Honduras) <i>Penelopina nigra</i> (Guatemala)
Megapodiidae Megapodes, scrubfowl		
<i>Macrocephalon maleo</i>		
Phasianidae Grouse, guineafowl, partridges, peafowl, pheasants, tragopans		
<i>Catreus wallichii</i>	<i>Argusianus argus</i>	

Appendices		
I	II	III
<p><i>Colinus virginianus ridgwayi</i>  <i>Crossoptilon crossoptilon</i>  <i>Crossoptilon mantchuricum</i></p> <p><i>Lophophorus impejanus</i>  <i>Lophophorus lhuysii</i>  <i>Lophophorus sclateri</i>  <i>Lophura edwardsi</i></p> <p><i>Lophura swinhoii</i></p> <p><i>Polyplectron napoleonis</i></p> <p><i>Rheinardia ocellata</i>  <i>Syrmaticus ellioti</i>  <i>Syrmaticus humiae</i>  <i>Syrmaticus mikado</i>  <i>Tetraogallus caspius</i>  <i>Tetraogallus tibetanus</i>  <i>Tragopan blythii</i>  <i>Tragopan caboti</i>  <i>Tragopan melanocephalus</i></p>	<p><i>Gallus sonneratii</i>  <i>Ithaginis cruentus</i></p> <p><i>Pavo muticus</i>  <i>Polyplectron bicalcaratum</i>  <i>Polyplectron germaini</i>  <i>Polyplectron malacense</i></p> <p><i>Polyplectron schleiermacheri</i></p> <p><i>Tympanuchus cupido attwateri</i></p>	<p><i>Lophura leucomelanos</i>  (Pakistan)</p> <p><i>Meleagris ocellata</i> (Guatemala)  <i>Pavo cristatus</i> (Pakistan)</p> <p><i>Pucrasia macrolopha</i> (Pakistan)</p> <p><i>Tragopan satyra</i> (Nepal)</p>
GRUIFORMES		
Gruidae Cranes		
<p><i>Grus americana</i>  <i>Grus canadensis nesiototes</i>  <i>Grus canadensis pulla</i>  <i>Grus japonensis</i>  <i>Grus leucogeranus</i>  <i>Grus monacha</i>  <i>Grus nigricollis</i>  <i>Grus vipio</i></p>	<p>Gruidae spp. (Except the species included in Appendix I)</p>	
Otididae Bustards		
<p><i>Ardeotis nigriceps</i>  <i>Chlamydotis macqueenii</i>  <i>Chlamydotis undulata</i>  <i>Houbaropsis bengalensis</i></p>	<p>Otididae spp. (Except the species included in Appendix I)</p>	

Appendices		
I	II	III
Rallidae Rail		
<b><i>Gallirallus sylvestris</i></b>		
Rhynochetidae Kagu		
<b><i>Rhynochetos jubatus</i></b>		
PASSERIFORMES		
Atrichornithidae Scrub-bird		
<b><i>Atrichornis clamosus</i></b>		
Cotingidae Cotingas		
<b><i>Cotinga maculata</i></b>	<b><i>Rupicola</i> spp.</b>	<b><i>Cephalopterus ornatus</i></b> (Colombia) <b><i>Cephalopterus penduliger</i></b> (Colombia)
<b><i>Xipholena atropurpurea</i></b>		
Emberizidae Cardinals, tanagers		
	<b><i>Gubernatrix cristata</i></b> <b><i>Paroaria capitata</i></b> <b><i>Paroaria coronata</i></b> <b><i>Tangara fastuosa</i></b>	
Estrildidae Mannikins, waxbills		
	<b><i>Amandava formosa</i></b> <b><i>Lonchura oryzivora</i></b> <b><i>Poephila cincta cincta</i></b>	
Fringillidae Finches		
<b><i>Carduelis cucullata</i></b>	<b><i>Carduelis yarrellii</i></b>	
Hirundinidae Martin		
<b><i>Pseudochelidon sirintarae</i></b>		
Icteridae Blackbird		
<b><i>Xanthopsar flavus</i></b>		
Meliphagidae Honeyeater		
<b><i>Lichenostomus melanops cassidix</i></b>		
Muscicapidae Old World flycatchers		
<b><i>Dasyornis broadbenti litoralis</i></b> (Possibly extinct) <b><i>Dasyornis longirostris</i></b>	<b><i>Cyornis ruckii</i></b>  <b><i>Garrulax canorus</i></b> <b><i>Garrulax taewanus</i></b> <b><i>Leiothrix argentauris</i></b> <b><i>Leiothrix lutea</i></b> <b><i>Liocichla omeiensis</i></b>	<b><i>Acrocephalus rodericanus</i></b> (Mauritius)
<b><i>Picathartes gymnocephalus</i></b> <b><i>Picathartes oreas</i></b>		<b><i>Terpsiphone bourbonnensis</i></b> (Mauritius)

Appendices		
I	II	III
Paradisaeidae Birds of paradise		
	<b>Paradisaeidae spp.</b>	
Pittidae Pittas		
<b><i>Pitta gurneyi</i></b> <b><i>Pitta kochi</i></b>	<b><i>Pitta guajana</i></b>  <b><i>Pitta nympa</i></b>	
Pycnonotidae Bulbul		
	<b><i>Pycnonotus zeylanicus</i></b>	
Sturnidae Mynahs (Starlings)		
<b><i>Leucopsar rothschildi</i></b>	<b><i>Gracula religiosa</i></b>	
Zosteropidae White-eye		
<b><i>Zosterops albogularis</i></b>		
PELECANIFORMES		
Fregatidae Frigatebird		
<b><i>Fregata andrewsi</i></b>		
Pelecanidae Pelican		
<b><i>Pelecanus crispus</i></b>		
Sulidae Booby		
<b><i>Papasula abbotti</i></b>		
PICIFORMES		
Capitonidae Barbet		
		<b><i>Semnornis ramphastinus</i></b> (Colombia)
Picidae Woodpeckers		
<b><i>Dryocopus javensis richardsi</i></b>		
Ramphastidae Toucans		
	<b><i>Pteroglossus aracari</i></b>  <b><i>Pteroglossus viridis</i></b>  <b><i>Ramphastos sulfuratus</i></b> <b><i>Ramphastos toco</i></b> <b><i>Ramphastos tucanus</i></b> <b><i>Ramphastos vitellinus</i></b>	<b><i>Bailloni bailloni</i></b> (Argentina)  <b><i>Pteroglossus castanotis</i></b> (Argentina)  <b><i>Ramphastos dicolorus</i></b> (Argentina)  <b><i>Selenidera maculirostris</i></b> (Argentina)
PODICIPEDIFORMES		
Podicipedidae Grebe		
<b><i>Podilymbus gigas</i></b>		
PROCELLARIIFORMES		
Diomedidae Albatross		
<b><i>Phoebastria albatrus</i></b>		

Appendices		
I	II	III
PSITTACIFORMES		
	<b>PSITTACIFORMES spp.</b> (Except the species included in Appendix I and <i>Agapornis roseicollis</i> , <i>Melopsittacus undulatus</i> , <i>Nymphicus hollandicus</i> and <i>Psittacula krameri</i> , which are not included in the Appendices)	
Cacatuidae Cockatoos		
<b><i>Cacatua goffiniana</i></b> <b><i>Cacatua haematuropygia</i></b> <b><i>Cacatua moluccensis</i></b> <b><i>Cacatua sulphurea</i></b> <b><i>Probosciger aterrimus</i></b>		
Loriidae Lories, lorikeets		
<b><i>Eos histrio</i></b> <b><i>Vini ultramarina</i></b>		
Psittacidae Amazons, macaws, parakeets, parrots		
<b><i>Amazona arausiaca</i></b> <b><i>Amazona auropalliata</i></b> <b><i>Amazona barbadensis</i></b> <b><i>Amazona brasiliensis</i></b> <b><i>Amazona finschi</i></b> <b><i>Amazona guildingii</i></b> <b><i>Amazona imperialis</i></b> <b><i>Amazona leucocephala</i></b> <b><i>Amazona oratrix</i></b> <b><i>Amazona pretrei</i></b> <b><i>Amazona rhodocorytha</i></b> <b><i>Amazona tucumana</i></b> <b><i>Amazona versicolor</i></b> <b><i>Amazona vinacea</i></b> <b><i>Amazona viridigenalis</i></b> <b><i>Amazona vittata</i></b> <b><i>Anodorhynchus spp.</i></b> <b><i>Ara ambiguus</i></b> <b><i>Ara glaucogularis</i></b> <b><i>Ara macao</i></b> <b><i>Ara militaris</i></b> <b><i>Ara rubrogenys</i></b> <b><i>Cyanopsitta spixii</i></b> <b><i>Cyanoramphus cookii</i></b> <b><i>Cyanoramphus forbesi</i></b> <b><i>Cyanoramphus novaezelandiae</i></b> <b><i>Cyanoramphus saisseti</i></b> <b><i>Cyclopsitta diophthalma coxeni</i></b> <b><i>Eunymphicus cornutus</i></b> <b><i>Guarouba guarouba</i></b> <b><i>Neophema chrysogaster</i></b> <b><i>Ognorhynchus icterotis</i></b> <b><i>Pezoporus occidentalis</i></b> (Possibly extinct)		

Appendices		
I	II	III
<p><i>Pezoporus wallicus</i>  <i>Pionopsitta pileata</i>  <i>Primolius couloni</i>  <i>Primolius maracana</i>  <i>Psephotus chrysopterygius</i>  <i>Psephotus dissimilis</i>  <i>Psephotus pulcherrimus</i>  (Possibly extinct)  <i>Psittacula echo</i>  <i>Pyrrhura cruentata</i>  <i>Rhynchopsitta</i> spp.  <i>Strigops habroptilus</i></p>		
RHEIFORMES		
Rheidae Rheas		
<p><i>Pterocnemia pennata</i> (Except  <i>Pterocnemia pennata pennata</i>  which is included in Appendix II)</p>	<p><i>Pterocnemia pennata pennata</i>  <i>Rhea americana</i></p>	
SPHENISCIFORMES		
Spheniscidae Penguins		
<p><i>Spheniscus humboldti</i></p>	<p><i>Spheniscus demersus</i></p>	
STRIGIFORMES Owls		
	<p><b>STRIGIFORMES</b> spp. (Except  <i>Sceloglaux albifacies</i> and the  species included in Appendix I)</p>	
Strigidae Owls		
<p><i>Heteroglaux blewitti</i>  <i>Mimizuku gurneyi</i>  <i>Ninox natalis</i>  <i>Ninox novaeseelandiae</i>  <i>undulata</i></p>		
Tytonidae Barn owls		
<p><i>Tyto soumagnei</i></p>		
STRUTHIONIFORMES		
Struthionidae Ostrich		
<p><i>Struthio camelus</i> (Only the  populations of Algeria, Burkina  Faso, Cameroon, the Central  African Republic, Chad, Mali,  Mauritania, Morocco, the Niger,  Nigeria, Senegal and the Sudan;  all other populations are not  included in the Appendices)</p>		
TINAMIFORMES		
Tinamidae Tinamous		
<p><i>Tinamus solitarius</i></p>		
TROGONIFORMES		
Trogonidae Quetzals		
<p><i>Pharomachrus mocinno</i></p>		

Appendices		
I	II	III
<b>CLASS REPTILIA (REPTILES)</b>		
CROCODYLIA Alligators, caimans, crocodiles		
CROCODYLIA spp. (Except the species included in Appendix I)		
Alligatoridae Alligators, caimans		
<p><b><i>Alligator sinensis</i></b></p> <p><b><i>Caiman crocodilus apaporiensis</i></b></p> <p><b><i>Caiman latirostris</i></b> (Except the population of Argentina, which is included in Appendix II)</p> <p><b><i>Melanosuchus niger</i></b> (Except the population of Brazil, which is included in Appendix II, and the population of Ecuador, which is included in Appendix II and is subject to a zero annual export quota until an annual export quota has been approved by the CITES Secretariat and the IUCN/SSC Crocodile Specialist Group)</p>		
Crocodylidae Crocodiles		
<p><b><i>Crocodylus acutus</i></b> (Except the population of Cuba, which is included in Appendix II)</p> <p><b><i>Crocodylus cataphractus</i></b></p> <p><b><i>Crocodylus intermedius</i></b></p> <p><b><i>Crocodylus mindorensis</i></b></p> <p><b><i>Crocodylus moreletii</i></b> (Except the populations of Belize and Mexico, which are included in Appendix II with a zero quota for wild specimens traded for commercial purposes)</p> <p><b><i>Crocodylus niloticus</i></b> [Except the populations of Botswana, Egypt (subject to a zero quota for wild specimens traded for commercial purposes), Ethiopia, Kenya, Madagascar, Malawi, Mozambique, Namibia, South Africa, Uganda, the United Republic of Tanzania (subject to an annual export quota of no more than 1,600 wild specimens including hunting trophies, in addition to ranched specimens), Zambia and Zimbabwe, which are included in Appendix II]</p> <p><b><i>Crocodylus palustris</i></b></p> <p><b><i>Crocodylus porosus</i></b> (Except the populations of Australia, Indonesia and Papua New Guinea, which are included in Appendix II)</p> <p><b><i>Crocodylus rhombifer</i></b></p> <p><b><i>Crocodylus siamensis</i></b></p>		

Appendices		
I	II	III
<b><i>Osteolaemus tetraspis</i></b> <b><i>Tomistoma schlegelii</i></b>		
Gavialidae Gaval		
<b><i>Gavialis gangeticus</i></b>		
RHYNCHOCEPHALIA		
Sphenodontidae Tuatara		
<b><i>Sphenodon</i> spp.</b>		
SAURIA		
Agamidae Agamas, mastigures		
	<b><i>Saara</i> spp.</b> <b><i>Uromastyx</i> spp.</b>	
Chamaeleonidae Chameleons		
<b><i>Brookesia perarmata</i></b>	<b><i>Archaius</i> spp.</b> <b><i>Bradypodion</i> spp.</b> <b><i>Brookesia</i> spp.</b> (Except the species included in Appendix I)  <b><i>Calumma</i> spp.</b> <b><i>Chamaeleo</i> spp.</b> <b><i>Furcifer</i> spp.</b> <b><i>Kinyongia</i> spp.</b> <b><i>Nadzikambia</i> spp.</b> <b><i>Triceros</i> spp.</b>	
Cordylidae Spiny-tailed lizards		
	<b><i>Cordylus</i> spp.</b>	
Gekkonidae Geckos		
	<b><i>Nactus serpensinsula</i></b> <b><i>Naultinus</i> spp.</b> <b><i>Phelsuma</i> spp.</b> <b><i>Uroplatus</i> spp.</b>	<b><i>Hoplodactylus</i> spp.</b> (New Zealand)
Helodermatidae Beaded lizard, gila monster		
<b><i>Heloderma horridum</i></b> <b><i>charlesbogerti</i></b>	<b><i>Heloderma</i> spp.</b> (Except the subspecies included in Appendix I)	
Iguanidae Iguanas		
<b><i>Brachylophus</i> spp.</b>  <b><i>Cyclura</i> spp.</b>	<b><i>Amblyrhynchus cristatus</i></b>  <b><i>Conolophus</i> spp.</b> <b><i>Ctenosaura bakeri</i></b> <b><i>Ctenosaura melanosterna</i></b> <b><i>Ctenosaura oedirhina</i></b> <b><i>Ctenosaura palearis</i></b>  <b><i>Iguana</i> spp.</b> <b><i>Phrynosoma blainvillii</i></b> <b><i>Phrynosoma cerroense</i></b> <b><i>Phrynosoma coronatum</i></b> <b><i>Phrynosoma wigginsi</i></b>	

Appendices		
I	II	III
<b>Sauromalus varius</b>		
Lacertidae Lizards		
<b>Gallotia simonyi</b>	<b>Podarcis lilfordi</b> <b>Podarcis pityusensis</b>	
Scincidae Skinks	<b>Corucia zebrata</b>	
Teiidae Caiman lizards, tegu lizards	<b>Crocodilurus amazonicus</b> <b>Dracaena spp.</b> <b>Tupinambis spp.</b>	
Varanidae Monitor lizards	<b>Varanus spp.</b> (Except the species included in Appendix I)	
<b>Varanus bengalensis</b> <b>Varanus flavescens</b> <b>Varanus griseus</b> <b>Varanus komodoensis</b> <b>Varanus nebulosus</b>		
Xenosauridae Chinese crocodile lizard	<b>Shinisaurus crocodilurus</b>	
SERPENTES Snakes		
Boidae Boas	<b>Boidae spp.</b> (Except the species included in Appendix I)	
<b>Acrantophis spp.</b> <b>Boa constrictor occidentalis</b> <b>Epicrates inornatus</b> <b>Epicrates monensis</b> <b>Epicrates subflavus</b> <b>Sanzinia madagascariensis</b>		
Bolyeriidae Round Island boas	<b>Bolyeriidae spp.</b> (Except the species included in Appendix I)	
<b>Bolyeria multocarinata</b> <b>Casarea dussumieri</b>		
Colubridae Typical snakes, water snakes, whipsnakes	<b>Clelia clelia</b> <b>Cyclagras gigas</b> <b>Elachistodon westermanni</b> <b>Ptyas mucosus</b>	<b>Atretium schistosum</b> (India) <b>Cerberus rynchops</b> (India)
		<b>Xenochrophis piscator</b> (India)
Elapidae Cobras, coral snakes	<b>Hoplocephalus bungaroides</b>  <b>Naja atra</b> <b>Naja kaouthia</b>	<b>Micrurus diastema</b> (Honduras) <b>Micrurus nigrocinctus</b> (Honduras)

Appendices		
I	II	III
	<i>Naja mandalayensis</i> <i>Naja naja</i> <i>Naja oxiana</i> <i>Naja philippinensis</i> <i>Naja sagittifera</i> <i>Naja samarensis</i> <i>Naja siamensis</i> <i>Naja sputatrix</i> <i>Naja sumatrana</i> <i>Ophiophagus hannah</i>	
Loxocemidae Mexican dwarf boa	<b>Loxocemidae spp.</b>	
Pythonidae Pythons	<b>Pythonidae spp.</b> (Except the subspecies included in Appendix I)	
<i>Python molurus molurus</i>		
Tropidophiidae Wood boas	<b>Tropidophiidae spp.</b>	
Viperidae Vipers		<i>Crotalus durissus</i> (Honduras) <i>Daboia russelii</i> (India)
<i>Vipera ursinii</i> (Only the population of Europe, except the area which formerly constituted the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics; these latter populations are not included in the Appendices)	<i>Trimeresurus mangshanensis</i>  <i>Vipera wagneri</i>	
TESTUDINES		
Carettochelyidae Pig-nosed turtles	<b>Carettochelys insculpta</b>	
Chelidae Austro-American side-necked turtles	<b>Chelodina mccordi</b> (Zero export quota for specimens from the wild)	
<i>Pseudemydura umbrina</i>		
Cheloniidae Marine turtles	<b>Cheloniidae spp.</b>	
Chelydridae Snapping turtles		<b>Macrochelys temminckii</b> (United States of America)
Dermatemydidae Central American river turtle	<b>Dermatemys mawii</b>	
Dermochelyidae Leatherback turtle	<b>Dermochelys coriacea</b>	
Emydidae Box turtles, freshwater turtles	<i>Clemmys guttata</i> <i>Emydoidea blandingii</i> <i>Glyptemys insculpta</i>	<b>Graptemys spp.</b> (United States of America)
<i>Glyptemys muhlenbergii</i>		

Appendices		
I	II	III
	<i>Malaclemys terrapin</i> <i>Terrapene</i> spp. (Except the species included in Appendix I)	
<i>Terrapene coahuila</i>		
Geoemydidae Box turtles, freshwater turtles		
<i>Batagur affinis</i> <i>Batagur baska</i>	<i>Batagur borneoensis</i> <sup>7</sup> <i>Batagur dhongoka</i> <i>Batagur kachuga</i> <i>Batagur trivittata</i> <sup>7</sup> <i>Cuora</i> spp. (Zero quota for wild specimens for commercial purposes for <i>Cuora aurocapitata</i> , <i>C. flavomarginata</i> , <i>C. galbinifrons</i> , <i>C. mccordi</i> , <i>C. mouhotii</i> , <i>C. pani</i> , <i>C. trifasciata</i> , <i>C. yunnanensis</i> and <i>C. zhoui</i> ) <i>Cyclemys</i> spp.	
<i>Geoclemys hamiltonii</i>	<i>Geoemyda japonica</i> <i>Geoemyda spengleri</i> <i>Hardella thurjii</i> <i>Heosemys annandalii</i> <sup>7</sup> <i>Heosemys depressa</i> <sup>7</sup> <i>Heosemys grandis</i> <i>Heosemys spinosa</i> <i>Leucocephalon yuwonoi</i> <i>Malayemys macrocephala</i> <i>Malayemys subtrijuga</i> <i>Mauremys annamensis</i> <sup>7</sup>	<i>Mauremys iversoni</i> (China)
	<i>Mauremys japonica</i>	<i>Mauremys megaloccephala</i> (China)
	<i>Mauremys mutica</i> <i>Mauremys nigricans</i>	<i>Mauremys pritchardi</i> (China) <i>Mauremys reevesii</i> (China) <i>Mauremys sinensis</i> (China)
<i>Melanochelys tricarinata</i>	<i>Melanochelys trijuga</i>	
<i>Morenia ocellata</i>	<i>Morenia petersi</i> <i>Notochelys platynota</i>	
	<i>Orlitia borneensis</i> <sup>7</sup>	<i>Ocadia glyphistoma</i> (China) <i>Ocadia philippeni</i> (China)

<sup>7</sup> Zero quota for wild specimens for commercial purposes.

Appendices		
I	II	III
<b><i>Pangshura tecta</i></b>	<b><i>Pangshura</i> spp.</b> (Except the species included in Appendix I)  <b><i>Sacalia bealei</i></b>  <b><i>Sacalia quadriocellata</i></b> <b><i>Siebenrockiella crassicollis</i></b> <b><i>Siebenrockiella leytensis</i></b> <b><i>Vijayachelys silvatica</i></b>	<b><i>Sacalia pseudocellata</i></b> (China)
Platystemnidae Big-headed turtles		
<b>Platystemnidae spp.</b>		
Podocnemididae Afro-American side-necked turtles		
	<b><i>Erymnochelys madagascariensis</i></b> <b><i>Peltocephalus dumerilianus</i></b> <b><i>Podocnemis</i> spp.</b>	
Testudinidae Tortoises		
<b><i>Astrochelys radiata</i></b> <b><i>Astrochelys yniphora</i></b> <b><i>Chelonoidis nigra</i></b> <b><i>Geochelone platynota</i></b> <b><i>Gopherus flavomarginatus</i></b> <b><i>Psammobates geometricus</i></b> <b><i>Pyxis arachnoides</i></b> <b><i>Pyxis planicauda</i></b> <b><i>Testudo kleinmanni</i></b>	<b>Testudinidae spp.</b> (Except the species included in Appendix I. A zero annual export quota has been established for <i>Geochelone sulcata</i> for specimens removed from the wild and traded for primarily commercial purposes)	
Trionychidae Softshell turtles, terrapins		
<b><i>Apalone spinifera atra</i></b>  <b><i>Chitra chitra</i></b> <b><i>Chitra vandijki</i></b>  <b><i>Nilssonina gangetica</i></b> <b><i>Nilssonina hurum</i></b>  <b><i>Nilssonina nigricans</i></b>	<b><i>Amyda cartilaginea</i></b>  <b><i>Chitra</i> spp.</b> (Except the species included in Appendix I)  <b><i>Dogania subplana</i></b> <b><i>Lissemys ceylonensis</i></b> <b><i>Lissemys punctata</i></b> <b><i>Lissemys scutata</i></b> <b><i>Nilssonina formosa</i></b>  <b><i>Nilssonina leithii</i></b>  <b><i>Palea steindachneri</i></b> <b><i>Pelochelys</i> spp.</b> <b><i>Pelodiscus axenaria</i></b>	

Appendices		
I	II	III
	<i>Pelodiscus maackii</i> <i>Pelodiscus parviformis</i> <i>Rafetus swinhoi</i>	
<b>CLASS AMPHIBIA (AMPHIBIANS)</b>		
ANURA		
Aromobatidae Fragrant frogs		
	<i>Allobates femoralis</i> <i>Allobates hodli</i> <i>Allobates myersi</i> <i>Allobates rufulus</i> <i>Allobates zaparo</i>	
Bufonidae Toads		
<i>Amietophrynus superciliaris</i> <i>Altiphrynoides</i> spp. <i>Atelopus zeteki</i> <i>Incilius periglenes</i> <i>Nectophrynoides</i> spp. <i>Nimbaphrynoides</i> spp.		
Calyptocephalellidae Chilean toads		<i>Calyptocephalella gayi</i> (Chile)
Dendrobatidae Poison frogs		
	<i>Adelphobates</i> spp. <i>Ameerega</i> spp. <i>Andinobates</i> spp. <i>Dendrobates</i> spp. <i>Epipedobates</i> spp. <i>Excidobates</i> spp. <i>Hyloxalus azureiventris</i> <i>Minyobates</i> spp. <i>Oophaga</i> spp. <i>Phyllobates</i> spp. <i>Ranitomeya</i> spp.	
Dicroglossidae Frogs		
	<i>Euphyctis hexadactylus</i> <i>Hoplobatrachus tigerinus</i>	
Hylidae Tree frogs		
	<i>Agalychnis</i> spp.	
Mantellidae Mantellas		
	<i>Mantella</i> spp.	
Microhylidae Red rain frog, tomato frog		
<i>Dyscophus antongilii</i>	<i>Scaphiophryne gottlebei</i>	
Myobatrachidae Gastric-brooding frogs		
	<i>Rheobatrachus</i> spp. (Except <i>Rheobatrachus silus</i> and <i>Rheobatrachus vitellinus</i> )	
CAUDATA		
Ambystomatidae Axolotls		
	<i>Ambystoma dumerilii</i> <i>Ambystoma mexicanum</i>	

Appendices		
I	II	III
Cryptobranchidae Hellbender and giant salamanders		
<b><i>Andrias</i> spp.</b>		<b><i>Cryptobranchus alleganiensis</i></b> (United States of America)
Hynobiidae Asiatic salamanders		
		<b><i>Hynobius amjiensis</i></b> (China)
Salamandridae Newts and salamanders		
<b><i>Neuregerus kaiseri</i></b>		
<b>CLASS ELASMOBRANCHII (SHARKS)</b>		
CARCHARHINIFORMES		
Carcharhinidae Requiem sharks		
	<b><i>Carcharhinus longimanus</i></b>	
Sphyrnidae Hammerhead sharks		
	<b><i>Sphyrna lewini</i></b>	
	<b><i>Sphyrna mokarran</i></b>	
	<b><i>Sphyrna zygaena</i></b>	
LAMNIFORMES		
Cetorhinidae Basking shark		
	<b><i>Cetorhinus maximus</i></b>	
Lamnidae Mackerel sharks		
	<b><i>Carcharodon carcharias</i></b>	
	<b><i>Lamna nasus</i></b>	
ORECTOLOBIFORMES		
Rhincodontidae Whale shark		
	<b><i>Rhincodon typus</i></b>	
PRISTIFORMES		
Pristidae Sawfishes		
<b>Pristidae spp.</b>		
RAJIFORMES		
Mobulidae Mobulid rays		
	<b><i>Manta</i> spp.</b>	
<b>CLASS ACTINOPTERYGII (FISHES)</b>		
ACIPENSERIFORMES Paddlefishes, sturgeons		
	<b>ACIPENSERIFORMES spp.</b> (Except the species included in Appendix I)	
Acipenseridae Sturgeons		
<b><i>Acipenser brevirostrum</i></b>		
<b><i>Acipenser sturio</i></b>		
ANGUILLIFORMES		
Anguillidae Freshwater eels		
	<b><i>Anguilla anguilla</i></b>	
CYPRINIFORMES		
Catostomidae Cui-ui		
<b><i>Chasmistes cujus</i></b>		
Cyprinidae Blind carps, plaeesok		
<b><i>Probarbus jullieni</i></b>	<b><i>Caecobarbus geertsii</i></b>	

I	Appendices II	III
OSTEOGLOSSIFORMES		
Arapaimidae Arapaimas	<i>Arapaima gigas</i>	
Osteoglossidae Bonytongue		
<i>Scleropages formosus</i> <sup>8</sup>		
PERCIFORMES		
Labridae Wrasses	<i>Cheilinus undulatus</i>	
Sciaenidae Totoaba	<i>Totoaba macdonaldi</i>	
SILURIFORMES		
Pangasiidae Pangasid catfish	<i>Pangasianodon gigas</i>	
SYNGNATHIFORMES		
Syngnathidae Pipefishes, seahorses	<i>Hippocampus spp.</i>	
<b>CLASS SARCOPTERYGII (LUNGFISHES)</b>		
CERATODONTIFORMES		
Ceratodontidae Australian lungfish	<i>Neoceratodus forsteri</i>	
COELACANTHIFORMES		
Latimeriidae Coelacanths	<i>Latimeria spp.</i>	
<b>PHYLUM ECHINODERMATA CLASS HOLOTHUROIDEA (SEA CUCUMBERS)</b>		
ASPIDOCHIROTIDA		
Stichopodidae Sea cucumbers		<i>Isostichopus fuscus</i> (Ecuador)
<b>PHYLUM ARTHROPODA CLASS ARACHNIDA (SCORPIONS AND SPIDERS)</b>		
ARANEAE		
Theraphosidae Red-kneed tarantulas, tarantulas	<i>Aphonopelma albiceps</i> <i>Aphonopelma pallidum</i> <i>Brachypelma spp.</i>	
SCORPIONES		
Scorpionidae Scorpions	<i>Pandinus dictator</i> <i>Pandinus gambiensis</i> <i>Pandinus imperator</i>	

<sup>8</sup> Includes the taxon *Scleropages inscriptus*.

I	Appendices II	III
<b>CLASS INSECTA (INSECTS)</b>		
COLEOPTERA		
Lucanidae Cape stag beetles		
		<b><i>Colophon</i> spp.</b> (South Africa)
Scarabaeidae Scarab beetles		
	<b><i>Dynastes satanas</i></b>	
LEPIDOPTERA		
Nymphalidae Brush-footed butterflies		
		<b><i>Agrias amydon boliviensis</i></b> (Plurinational State of Bolivia) <b><i>Morpho godartii lachaumei</i></b> (Plurinational State of Bolivia) <b><i>Prepona praeneste buckleyana</i></b> (Plurinational State of Bolivia)
Papilionidae Birdwing butterflies, swallowtail butterflies		
<b><i>Ornithoptera alexandrae</i></b> <b><i>Papilio chikae</i></b> <b><i>Papilio homerus</i></b>	<b><i>Atrophaneura jophon</i></b> <b><i>Atrophaneura pandiyana</i></b> <b><i>Bhutanitis</i> spp.</b> <b><i>Ornithoptera</i> spp.</b> (Except the species included in Appendix I)  <b><i>Papilio hospiton</i></b> <b><i>Parnassius apollo</i></b> <b><i>Teinopalpus</i> spp.</b> <b><i>Trogonoptera</i> spp.</b> <b><i>Troides</i> spp.</b>	
<b>PHYLUM ANNELIDA CLASS HIRUDINOIDEA (LEECHES)</b>		
ARHYNCHOBDELLIDA		
Hirudinidae Medicinal leeches		
	<b><i>Hirudo medicinalis</i></b> <b><i>Hirudo verbana</i></b>	
<b>PHYLUM MOLLUSCA CLASS BIVALVIA (CLAMS AND MUSSELS)</b>		
MYTILOIDA		
Mytilidae Marine mussels		
	<b><i>Lithophaga lithophaga</i></b>	
UNIONOIDA		
Unionidae Freshwater mussels, pearly mussels		
<b><i>Conradilla caelata</i></b>  <b><i>Dromus dromas</i></b> <b><i>Epioblasma curtisi</i></b> <b><i>Epioblasma florentina</i></b> <b><i>Epioblasma sampsonii</i></b> <b><i>Epioblasma sulcata perobliqua</i></b>	<b><i>Cyprogenia aberti</i></b>	

Appendices		
I	II	III
<i>Epioblasma torulosa gubernaculum</i>	<i>Epioblasma torulosa rangiana</i>	
<i>Epioblasma torulosa torulosa</i>		
<i>Epioblasma turgidula</i>		
<i>Epioblasma walkeri</i>		
<i>Fusconaia cuneolus</i>		
<i>Fusconaia edgariana</i>		
<i>Lampsilis higginsii</i>		
<i>Lampsilis orbiculata orbiculata</i>		
<i>Lampsilis satur</i>		
<i>Lampsilis virescens</i>		
<i>Plethobasus cicatricosus</i>		
<i>Plethobasus cooperianus</i>		
<i>Pleurobema plenum</i>	<i>Pleurobema clava</i>	
<i>Potamilus capax</i>		
<i>Quadrula intermedia</i>		
<i>Quadrula sparsa</i>		
<i>Toxolasma cylindrella</i>		
<i>Unio nickliniana</i>		
<i>Unio tampicoensis tecomatensis</i>		
<i>Villosa trabalis</i>		
VENEROIDA		
Tridacnidae Giant clams		
	Tridacnidae spp.	
<b>CLASS GASTROPODA (SNAILS AND CONCHES)</b>		
MESOGASTROPODA		
Strombidae Queen conch		
	<i>Strombus gigas</i>	
STYLOMMATOPHORA		
Achatinellidae Agate snails, oahu tree snails		
	<i>Achatinella</i> spp.	
Camaenidae Green tree snail		
	<i>Papustyla pulcherrima</i>	
<b>PHYLUM CNIDARIA CLASS ANTHOZOA (CORALS AND SEA ANEMONES)</b>		
ANTIPATHARIA Black corals		
	ANTIPATHARIA spp.	
GORGONACEAE		
Coralliidae		
		<i>Corallium elatius</i> (China) <i>Corallium japonicum</i> (China) <i>Corallium konjoi</i> (China) <i>Corallium secundum</i> (China)

Appendices		
I	II	III
HELIOPORACEA		
Helioporidae Blue corals		
	<b>Helioporidae spp.</b> (Includes only the species <i>Heliopora coerulea</i> . Fossils are not subject to the provisions of the Convention)	
SCLERACTINIA Stony corals		
	<b>SCLERACTINIA spp.</b> (Fossils are not subject to the provisions of the Convention)	
STOLONIFERA		
Tubiporidae Organ-pipe corals		
	<b>Tubiporidae spp.</b> (Fossils are not subject to the provisions of the Convention)	
<b>CLASS HYDROZOA (SEA FERNS, FIRE CORALS AND STINGING MEDUSAE)</b>		
MILLEPORINA		
Milleporidae Fire corals		
	<b>Milleporidae spp.</b> (Fossils are not subject to the provisions of the Convention)	
STYLASTERINA		
Stylasteridae Lace corals		
	<b>Stylasteridae spp.</b> (Fossils are not subject to the provisions of the Convention)	

Appendices		
I	II	III
<b>F L O R A ( P L A N T S )</b>		
AGAVACEAE Agaves		
<b><i>Agave parviflora</i></b>	<b><i>Agave victoriae-reginae</i></b> #4 <b><i>Nolina interrata</i></b> <b><i>Yucca queretaroensis</i></b>	
AMARYLLIDACEAE Snowdrops, sternbergias		
	<b><i>Galanthus</i> spp.</b> #4 <b><i>Sternbergia</i> spp.</b> #4	
ANACARDIACEAE Cashews		
	<b><i>Operculicarya decaryi</i></b> <b><i>Operculicarya hyphaenoides</i></b> <b><i>Operculicarya pachypus</i></b>	
APOCYNACEAE Elephant trunks, hoodias		
<b><i>Pachypodium ambongense</i></b> <b><i>Pachypodium baronii</i></b> <b><i>Pachypodium decaryi</i></b>	<b><i>Hoodia</i> spp.</b> #9 <b><i>Pachypodium</i> spp.</b> #4 (Except the species included in Appendix I)  <b><i>Rauvolfia serpentina</i></b> #2	
ARALIACEAE Ginseng		
	<b><i>Panax ginseng</i></b> #3 (Only the population of the Russian Federation; no other population is included in the Appendices) <b><i>Panax quinquefolius</i></b> #3	
ARAUCARIACEAE Monkey-puzzle tree		
<b><i>Araucaria araucana</i></b>		
BERBERIDACEAE May-apple		
	<b><i>Podophyllum hexandrum</i></b> #2	

#4 All parts and derivatives, except:

- seeds (including seedpods of Orchidaceae), spores and pollen (including pollinia). The exemption does not apply to seeds from Cactaceae spp. exported from Mexico, and to seeds from *Beccariophoenix madagascariensis* and *Neodypsis decaryi* exported from Madagascar;
- seedling or tissue cultures obtained *in vitro*, in solid or liquid media, transported in sterile containers;
- cut flowers of artificially propagated plants;
- fruits, and parts and derivatives thereof, of naturalized or artificially propagated plants of the genus *Vanilla* (Orchidaceae) and of the family Cactaceae;
- stems, flowers, and parts and derivatives thereof, of naturalized or artificially propagated plants of the genera *Opuntia* subgenus *Opuntia* and *Selenicereus* (Cactaceae); and
- finished products of *Euphorbia antisyphilitica* packaged and ready for retail trade.

#9 All parts and derivatives except those bearing a label:

"Produced from *Hoodia* spp. material obtained through controlled harvesting and production under the terms of an agreement with the relevant CITES Management Authority of [Botswana under agreement No. BW/xxxxxx] [Namibia under agreement No. NA/xxxxxx] [South Africa under agreement No. ZA/xxxxxx]".

#2 All parts and derivatives except:

- seeds and pollen; and
- finished products packaged and ready for retail trade.

#3 Whole and sliced roots and parts of roots, excluding manufactured parts or derivatives, such as powders, pills, extracts, tonics, teas and confectionery.

Appendices		
I	II	III
BROMELIACEAE Air plants, bromelias		
	<i>Tillandsia harrisii</i> #4 <i>Tillandsia kammii</i> #4 <i>Tillandsia mauryana</i> #4 <i>Tillandsia xerographica</i> #4	
CACTACEAE Cacti		
<b>Ariocarpus spp.</b> <b>Astrophytum asterias</b> <b>Aztekium ritteri</b> <b>Coryphantha werdermannii</b> <b>Discocactus spp.</b> <b>Echinocereus ferreirianus</b> <b>ssp. lindsayi</b> <b>Echinocereus schmollii</b> <b>Escobaria minima</b> <b>Escobaria sneedii</b> <b>Mammillaria pectinifera</b> <b>Mammillaria solisioides</b> <b>Melocactus conoideus</b> <b>Melocactus deinacanthus</b> <b>Melocactus glaucescens</b> <b>Melocactus paucispinus</b> <b>Obregonia denegrii</b> <b>Pachycereus militaris</b> <b>Pediocactus bradyi</b> <b>Pediocactus knowltonii</b> <b>Pediocactus paradinei</b> <b>Pediocactus peeblesianus</b> <b>Pediocactus sileri</b>	<b>CACTACEAE spp.</b> <sup>9 #4</sup> (Except the species included in Appendix I and except <i>Pereskia</i> spp., <i>Peresklopsis</i> spp. and <i>Quiabentia</i> spp.)	

#4 All parts and derivatives, except:

- seeds (including seedpods of Orchidaceae), spores and pollen (including pollinia). The exemption does not apply to seeds from Cactaceae spp. exported from Mexico, and to seeds from *Beccariophoenix madagascariensis* and *Neodypsis decaryi* exported from Madagascar;
- seedling or tissue cultures obtained *in vitro*, in solid or liquid media, transported in sterile containers;
- cut flowers of artificially propagated plants;
- fruits, and parts and derivatives thereof, of naturalized or artificially propagated plants of the genus *Vanilla* (Orchidaceae) and of the family Cactaceae;
- stems, flowers, and parts and derivatives thereof, of naturalized or artificially propagated plants of the genera *Opuntia* subgenus *Opuntia* and *Selenicereus* (Cactaceae); and
- finished products of *Euphorbia antisiphilitica* packaged and ready for retail trade.

<sup>9</sup> Artificially propagated specimens of the following hybrids and/or cultivars are not subject to the provisions of the Convention:

- *Hatiora x graeseri*
- *Schlumbergera x buckleyi*
- *Schlumbergera russelliana x Schlumbergera truncata*
- *Schlumbergera orssichiana x Schlumbergera truncata*
- *Schlumbergera opuntiioides x Schlumbergera truncata*
- *Schlumbergera truncata* (cultivars)
- Cactaceae spp. colour mutants grafted on the following grafting stocks: *Harrisia 'Jusbertii'*, *Hylocereus trigonus* or *Hylocereus undatus*
- *Opuntia microdasys* (cultivars).

Appendices		
I	II	III
<b><i>Pelecyphora</i> spp.</b> <b><i>Sclerocactus brevihamatus</i></b> <b>    <i>ssp. tobuschii</i></b> <b><i>Sclerocactus erectocentrus</i></b> <b><i>Sclerocactus glaucus</i></b> <b><i>Sclerocactus mariposensis</i></b> <b><i>Sclerocactus mesae-verdae</i></b> <b><i>Sclerocactus nyensis</i></b> <b><i>Sclerocactus papyracanthus</i></b> <b><i>Sclerocactus pubispinus</i></b> <b><i>Sclerocactus wrightiae</i></b> <b><i>Strombocactus</i> spp.</b> <b><i>Turbincarpus</i> spp.</b> <b><i>Uebelmannia</i> spp.</b>		
CARYOCARACEAE Ajo	<b><i>Caryocar costaricense</i></b> <sup>#4</sup>	
COMPOSITAE (Asteraceae) Kuth		
<b><i>Saussurea costus</i></b>		
CUCURBITACEAE Melons, gourds, cucurbits		
	<b><i>Zygositycos pubescens</i></b>	
	<b><i>Zygositycos tripartitus</i></b>	
CUPRESSACEAE Alerce, cypresses		
<b><i>Fitzroya cupressoides</i></b>		
<b><i>Pilgerodendron uviferum</i></b>		
CYATHEACEAE Tree-ferns	<b><i>Cyathea</i> spp.</b> <sup>#4</sup>	
CYCADACEAE Cycads		
	<b>CYCADACEAE spp.</b> <sup>#4</sup> (Except the species included in Appendix I)	
<b><i>Cycas beddomei</i></b>		
DICKSONIACEAE Tree-ferns		
	<b><i>Cibotium barometz</i></b> <sup>#4</sup>	
	<b><i>Dicksonia</i> spp.</b> <sup>#4</sup> (Only the populations of the Americas; no other population is included in the Appendices)	
DIDIEREACEAE Alluaudias, didiereas		
	<b>DIDIEREACEAE spp.</b> <sup>#4</sup>	
DIOSCOREACEAE Elephant's foot, kniss		
	<b><i>Dioscorea deltoidea</i></b> <sup>#4</sup>	

<sup>#4</sup> All parts and derivatives, except:

- seeds (including seedpods of Orchidaceae), spores and pollen (including pollinia). The exemption does not apply to seeds from Cactaceae spp. exported from Mexico, and to seeds from *Beccariophoenix madagascariensis* and *Neodypsis decaryi* exported from Madagascar;
- seedling or tissue cultures obtained *in vitro*, in solid or liquid media, transported in sterile containers;
- cut flowers of artificially propagated plants;
- fruits, and parts and derivatives thereof, of naturalized or artificially propagated plants of the genus *Vanilla* (Orchidaceae) and of the family Cactaceae;
- stems, flowers, and parts and derivatives thereof, of naturalized or artificially propagated plants of the genera *Opuntia* subgenus *Opuntia* and *Selenicereus* (Cactaceae); and
- finished products of *Euphorbia antisyphilitica* packaged and ready for retail trade.

Appendices		
I	II	III
DROSERACEAE Venus' flytrap		
	<i>Dionaea muscipula</i> <sup>#4</sup>	
EBENACEAE Ebonies		
	<i>Diospyros</i> spp. <sup>#5</sup> (Populations of Madagascar)	
EUPHORBIACEAE Spurges		
	<i>Euphorbia</i> spp. <sup>#4</sup> (Succulent species only except <i>Euphorbia misera</i> and the species included in Appendix I. Artificially propagated specimens of cultivars of <i>Euphorbia trigona</i> , artificially propagated specimens of crested, fan-shaped or colour mutants of <i>Euphorbia lactea</i> , when grafted on artificially propagated root stock of <i>Euphorbia neriifolia</i> , and artificially propagated specimens of cultivars of <i>Euphorbia</i> 'Mili' when they are traded in shipments of 100 or more plants and readily recognizable as artificially propagated specimens, are not subject to the provisions of the Convention)	
	<i>Euphorbia ambovombensis</i>	
	<i>Euphorbia capsaintemariensis</i>	
	<i>Euphorbia cremersii</i> (Includes the forma <i>viridifolia</i> and the var. <i>rakotozafy</i> )	
	<i>Euphorbia cylindrifolia</i> (Includes the ssp. <i>tuberifera</i> )	
	<i>Euphorbia decaryi</i> (Includes the vars. <i>ampanihyensis</i> , <i>robinsonii</i> and <i>spirosticha</i> )	
	<i>Euphorbia francoisii</i>	
	<i>Euphorbia moratii</i> (Includes the vars. <i>antsingensis</i> , <i>bemarahensis</i> and <i>multiflora</i> )	
	<i>Euphorbia parvicyathophora</i>	
	<i>Euphorbia quartziticola</i>	
	<i>Euphorbia tulearensis</i>	

<sup>#4</sup> All parts and derivatives, except:

- seeds (including seedpods of Orchidaceae), spores and pollen (including pollinia). The exemption does not apply to seeds from Cactaceae spp. exported from Mexico, and to seeds from *Beccariophoenix madagascariensis* and *Neodypsis decaryi* exported from Madagascar;
- seedling or tissue cultures obtained *in vitro*, in solid or liquid media, transported in sterile containers;
- cut flowers of artificially propagated plants;
- fruits, and parts and derivatives thereof, of naturalized or artificially propagated plants of the genus *Vanilla* (Orchidaceae) and of the family Cactaceae;
- stems, flowers, and parts and derivatives thereof, of naturalized or artificially propagated plants of the genera *Opuntia* subgenus *Opuntia* and *Selenicereus* (Cactaceae); and
- finished products of *Euphorbia antisyphilitica* packaged and ready for retail trade.

<sup>#5</sup> Logs, sawn wood and veneer sheets.

Appendices		
I	II	III
FAGACEAE Beeches		<i>Quercus mongolica</i> <sup>#5</sup> (Russian Federation)
FOUQUIERIACEAE Ocotillos	<i>Fouquieria columnaris</i> <sup>#4</sup>	
<i>Fouquieria fasciculata</i> <i>Fouquieria purpusii</i>		
GNETACEAE Gnetums		<i>Gnetum montanum</i> <sup>#1</sup> (Nepal)
JUGLANDACEAE Gavilan	<i>Oreomunnea pterocarpa</i> <sup>#4</sup>	
LAURACEAE Laurels	<i>Aniba rosaeodora</i> <sup>#12</sup>	
LEGUMINOSAE (Fabaceae) Afrormosia, cristobal, palisander, rosewood, sandalwood	<i>Caesalpinia echinata</i> <sup>#10</sup> <i>Dalbergia</i> spp. <sup>#5</sup> (Populations of Madagascar) <i>Dalbergia cochinchinensis</i> <sup>#5</sup>	<i>Dalbergia calycina</i> <sup>#6</sup> [Population of Guatemala] (Guatemala) <i>Dalbergia cubilquitzensis</i> <sup>#6</sup> [Population of Guatemala] (Guatemala) <i>Dalbergia darienensis</i> <sup>#2</sup> [Population of Panama] (Panama) <i>Dalbergia glomerata</i> <sup>#6</sup> [Population of Guatemala] (Guatemala)

<sup>#5</sup> Logs, sawn wood and veneer sheets.

<sup>#4</sup> All parts and derivatives, except:

- seeds (including seedpods of Orchidaceae), spores and pollen (including pollinia). The exemption does not apply to seeds from Cactaceae spp. exported from Mexico, and to seeds from *Beccariophoenix madagascariensis* and *Neodypsis decaryi* exported from Madagascar;
- seedling or tissue cultures obtained *in vitro*, in solid or liquid media, transported in sterile containers;
- cut flowers of artificially propagated plants;
- fruits, and parts and derivatives thereof, of naturalized or artificially propagated plants of the genus *Vanilla* (Orchidaceae) and of the family Cactaceae;
- stems, flowers, and parts and derivatives thereof, of naturalized or artificially propagated plants of the genera *Opuntia* subgenus *Opuntia* and *Selenicereus* (Cactaceae); and
- finished products of *Euphorbia antisyphilitica* packaged and ready for retail trade.

<sup>#1</sup> All parts and derivatives, except:

- seeds, spores and pollen (including pollinia);
- seedling or tissue cultures obtained *in vitro*, in solid or liquid media, transported in sterile containers;
- cut flowers of artificially propagated plants; and
- fruits, and parts and derivatives thereof, of artificially propagated plants of the genus *Vanilla*.

<sup>#12</sup> Logs, sawn wood, veneer sheets, plywood and extracts. Finished products containing such extracts as ingredients, including fragrances, are not considered to be covered by this annotation.

<sup>#10</sup> Logs, sawn wood, veneer sheets, including unfinished wood articles used for the fabrication of bows for stringed musical instruments.

<sup>#6</sup> Logs, sawn wood, veneer sheets and plywood.

<sup>#2</sup> All parts and derivatives except:

- seeds and pollen; and
- finished products packaged and ready for retail trade.

Appendices		
I	II	III
<b><i>Dalbergia nigra</i></b>	<b><i>Dalbergia granadillo</i></b> <sup>#6</sup>  <b><i>Dalbergia retusa</i></b> <sup>#6</sup> <b><i>Dalbergia stevensonii</i></b> <sup>#6</sup>   <b><i>Pericopsis elata</i></b> <sup>#5</sup> <b><i>Platymiscium pleiostachyum</i></b> <sup>#4</sup> <b><i>Pterocarpus santalinus</i></b> <sup>#7</sup> <b><i>Senna meridionalis</i></b>	<b><i>Dalbergia tucurensis</i></b> <sup>#6</sup> (Nicaragua. In addition, Guatemala has listed its national population) <b><i>Dipteryx panamensis</i></b> (Costa Rica, Nicaragua)
LILIACEAE Aloes		
<b><i>Aloe albida</i></b> <b><i>Aloe albiflora</i></b> <b><i>Aloe alfredii</i></b> <b><i>Aloe bakeri</i></b> <b><i>Aloe bellatula</i></b> <b><i>Aloe calcairophila</i></b> <b><i>Aloe compressa</i></b> (Includes the vars. <i>paucituberculata</i> , <i>rugosquamosa</i> and <i>schistophila</i> ) <b><i>Aloe delphinensis</i></b> <b><i>Aloe descoingsii</i></b> <b><i>Aloe fragilis</i></b> <b><i>Aloe haworthioides</i></b> (Includes the var. <i>aurantiaca</i> ) <b><i>Aloe helenae</i></b> <b><i>Aloe laeta</i></b> (Includes the var. <i>maniaensis</i> ) <b><i>Aloe parallelifolia</i></b>	<b><i>Aloe spp.</i></b> <sup>#4</sup> (Except the species included in Appendix I. Also excludes <i>Aloe vera</i> , also referenced as <i>Aloe barbadensis</i> which is not included in the Appendices)	

<sup>#6</sup> Logs, sawn wood, veneer sheets and plywood.

<sup>#5</sup> Logs, sawn wood and veneer sheets.

<sup>#4</sup> All parts and derivatives, except:

- a) seeds (including seedpods of Orchidaceae), spores and pollen (including pollinia). The exemption does not apply to seeds from Cactaceae spp. exported from Mexico, and to seeds from *Beccariophoenix madagascariensis* and *Neodypsis decaryi* exported from Madagascar;
- b) seedling or tissue cultures obtained *in vitro*, in solid or liquid media, transported in sterile containers;
- c) cut flowers of artificially propagated plants;
- d) fruits, and parts and derivatives thereof, of naturalized or artificially propagated plants of the genus *Vanilla* (Orchidaceae) and of the family Cactaceae;
- e) stems, flowers, and parts and derivatives thereof, of naturalized or artificially propagated plants of the genera *Opuntia* subgenus *Opuntia* and *Selenicereus* (Cactaceae); and
- f) finished products of *Euphorbia antisyphilitica* packaged and ready for retail trade.

<sup>#7</sup> Logs, woodchips, powder and extracts.

Appendices		
I	II	III
<b><i>Aloe parvula</i></b> <b><i>Aloe pillansii</i></b> <b><i>Aloe polyphylla</i></b> <b><i>Aloe rauhii</i></b> <b><i>Aloe suzannae</i></b> <b><i>Aloe versicolor</i></b> <b><i>Aloe vossii</i></b>		
MAGNOLIACEAE Magnolia		<b><i>Magnolia liliifera</i></b> var. <b><i>obovata</i></b> <sup>#1</sup> (Nepal)
MELIACEAE Mahoganies, West Indian cedar		<b><i>Cedrela fissilis</i></b> <sup>#5</sup> (Plurinational State of Bolivia) <b><i>Cedrela lilloi</i></b> <sup>#5</sup> (Plurinational State of Bolivia) <b><i>Cedrela odorata</i></b> <sup>#5</sup> (Brazil and the Plurinational State of Bolivia. In addition, the following countries have listed their national populations: Colombia, Guatemala and Peru)
	<b><i>Swietenia humilis</i></b> <sup>#4</sup> <b><i>Swietenia macrophylla</i></b> <sup>#6</sup> (Populations of the Neotropics) <b><i>Swietenia mahagoni</i></b> <sup>#5</sup>	
NEPENTHACEAE Pitcher-plants (Old World)		
	<b><i>Nepenthes</i></b> spp. <sup>#4</sup> (Except the species included in Appendix I)	
<b><i>Nepenthes khasiana</i></b> <b><i>Nepenthes rajah</i></b>		
OLEACEAE Ashes, etc.		<b><i>Fraxinus mandshurica</i></b> <sup>#5</sup> (Russian Federation)

<sup>#1</sup> All parts and derivatives, except:  
a) seeds, spores and pollen (including pollinia);  
b) seedling or tissue cultures obtained *in vitro*, in solid or liquid media, transported in sterile containers;  
c) cut flowers of artificially propagated plants; and  
d) fruits, and parts and derivatives thereof, of artificially propagated plants of the genus *Vanilla*.

<sup>#5</sup> Logs, sawn wood and veneer sheets.

<sup>#4</sup> All parts and derivatives, except:  
a) seeds (including seedpods of Orchidaceae), spores and pollen (including pollinia). The exemption does not apply to seeds from Cactaceae spp. exported from Mexico, and to seeds from *Beccariophoenix madagascariensis* and *Neodypsis decaryi* exported from Madagascar;  
b) seedling or tissue cultures obtained *in vitro*, in solid or liquid media, transported in sterile containers;  
c) cut flowers of artificially propagated plants;  
d) fruits, and parts and derivatives thereof, of naturalized or artificially propagated plants of the genus *Vanilla* (Orchidaceae) and of the family Cactaceae;  
e) stems, flowers, and parts and derivatives thereof, of naturalized or artificially propagated plants of the genera *Opuntia* subgenus *Opuntia* and *Selenicereus* (Cactaceae); and  
f) finished products of *Euphorbia antisyphilitica* packaged and ready for retail trade.

<sup>#6</sup> Logs, sawn wood, veneer sheets and plywood.

Appendices		
I	II	III
ORCHIDACEAE Orchids		
<p>(For all of the following Appendix-I species, seedling or tissue cultures obtained <i>in vitro</i>, in solid or liquid media, and transported in sterile containers are not subject to the provisions of the Convention only if the specimens meet the definition of 'artificially propagated' agreed by the Conference of the Parties)</p> <p><b><i>Aerangis ellisii</i></b>  <b><i>Dendrobium cruentum</i></b>  <b><i>Laelia jongheana</i></b>  <b><i>Laelia lobata</i></b>  <b><i>Paphiopedilum</i> spp.</b>  <b><i>Peristeria elata</i></b>  <b><i>Phragmipedium</i> spp.</b>  <b><i>Renanthera imschootiana</i></b></p>	<p><b>ORCHIDACEAE spp.</b><sup>10 #4</sup>  (Except the species included in Appendix I)</p>	
OROBANCHACEAE Broomrape		
	<b><i>Cistanche deserticola</i></b> <sup>#4</sup>	
PALMAE (Arecaceae) Palms		
<b><i>Chrysalidocarpus decipiens</i></b>	<p><b><i>Beccariophoenix madagascariensis</i></b><sup>#4</sup></p> <p><b><i>Lemurophoenix halleuxii</i></b></p>	<b><i>Lodoicea maldivica</i></b> <sup>#13</sup> (Seychelles)

<sup>10</sup> Artificially propagated hybrids of the following genera are not subject to the provisions of the Convention, if conditions, as indicated under a) and b), are met: *Cymbidium*, *Dendrobium*, *Phalaenopsis* and *Vanda*:

- a) Specimens are readily recognizable as artificially propagated and do not show any signs of having been collected in the wild such as mechanical damage or strong dehydration resulting from collection, irregular growth and heterogeneous size and shape within a taxon and shipment, algae or other epiphyllous organisms adhering to leaves, or damage by insects or other pests; and
- b) i) when shipped in non-flowering state, the specimens must be traded in shipments consisting of individual containers (such as cartons, boxes, crates or individual shelves of CC-containers) each containing 20 or more plants of the same hybrid; the plants within each container must exhibit a high degree of uniformity and healthiness; and the shipment must be accompanied by documentation, such as an invoice, which clearly states the number of plants of each hybrid; or
- ii) when shipped in flowering state, with at least one fully open flower per specimen, no minimum number of specimens per shipment is required but specimens must be professionally processed for commercial retail sale, e.g. labelled with printed labels or packaged with printed packages indicating the name of the hybrid and the country of final processing. This should be clearly visible and allow easy verification.

Plants not clearly qualifying for the exemption must be accompanied by appropriate CITES documents.

<sup>#4</sup> All parts and derivatives, except:

- a) seeds (including seedpods of Orchidaceae), spores and pollen (including pollinia). The exemption does not apply to seeds from Cactaceae spp. exported from Mexico, and to seeds from *Beccariophoenix madagascariensis* and *Neodypsis decaryi* exported from Madagascar;
- b) seedling or tissue cultures obtained *in vitro*, in solid or liquid media, transported in sterile containers;
- c) cut flowers of artificially propagated plants;
- d) fruits, and parts and derivatives thereof, of naturalized or artificially propagated plants of the genus *Vanilla* (Orchidaceae) and of the family Cactaceae;
- e) stems, flowers, and parts and derivatives thereof, of naturalized or artificially propagated plants of the genera *Opuntia* subgenus *Opuntia* and *Selenicereus* (Cactaceae); and
- f) finished products of *Euphorbia antisyphilitica* packaged and ready for retail trade.

<sup>#13</sup> The kernel (also known as 'endosperm', 'pulp' or 'copra') and any derivative thereof.

Appendices		
I	II	III
	<i>Marojejya darianii</i> <i>Neodypsis decaryi</i> #4 <i>Ravenea louvelii</i> <i>Ravenea rivularis</i> <i>Satranala decussilvae</i> <i>Voanioala gerardii</i>	
PAPAVERACEAE Poppy		<i>Meconopsis regia</i> #1 (Nepal)
PASSIFLORACEAE Passion-flowers	<i>Adenia firingalavensis</i> <i>Adenia olaboensis</i> <i>Adenia subsessilifolia</i>	
PEDALIACEAE Sesames	<i>Uncarina grandidieri</i> <i>Uncarina stellulifera</i>	
PINACEAE Firs and pines	<i>Abies guatemalensis</i>	<i>Pinus koraiensis</i> #5 (Russian Federation)
PODOCARPACEAE Podocarps	<i>Podocarpus parlatorei</i>	<i>Podocarpus neriifolius</i> #1 (Nepal)
PORTULACACEAE Lewisias, portulacas, purslanes	<i>Anacampseros</i> spp. #4 <i>Avonia</i> spp. #4 <i>Lewisia serrata</i> #4	
PRIMULACEAE Cyclamens	<i>Cyclamen</i> spp. #11 #4	

#4 All parts and derivatives, except:

- seeds (including seedpods of Orchidaceae), spores and pollen (including pollinia). The exemption does not apply to seeds from Cactaceae spp. exported from Mexico, and to seeds from *Beccariophoenix madagascariensis* and *Neodypsis decaryi* exported from Madagascar;
- seedling or tissue cultures obtained *in vitro*, in solid or liquid media, transported in sterile containers;
- cut flowers of artificially propagated plants;
- fruits, and parts and derivatives thereof, of naturalized or artificially propagated plants of the genus *Vanilla* (Orchidaceae) and of the family Cactaceae;
- stems, flowers, and parts and derivatives thereof, of naturalized or artificially propagated plants of the genera *Opuntia* subgenus *Opuntia* and *Selenicereus* (Cactaceae); and
- finished products of *Euphorbia antisyphilitica* packaged and ready for retail trade.

#1 All parts and derivatives, except:

- seeds, spores and pollen (including pollinia);
- seedling or tissue cultures obtained *in vitro*, in solid or liquid media, transported in sterile containers;
- cut flowers of artificially propagated plants; and
- fruits, and parts and derivatives thereof, of artificially propagated plants of the genus *Vanilla*.

#5 Logs, sawn wood and veneer sheets.

#11 Artificially propagated specimens of cultivars of *Cyclamen persicum* are not subject to the provisions of the Convention. However, the exemption does not apply to such specimens traded as dormant tubers.

Appendices		
I	II	III
RANUNCULACEAE Golden seals, yellow adonis, yellow root	<i>Adonis vernalis</i> <sup>#2</sup> <i>Hydrastis canadensis</i> <sup>#8</sup>	
ROSACEAE African cherry, stinkwood	<i>Prunus africana</i> <sup>#4</sup>	
RUBIACEAE Ayugue		
<i>Balmea stormiae</i>		
SANTALACEAE Sandalwoods	<i>Osyris lanceolata</i> <sup>#2</sup> (Populations of Burundi, Ethiopia, Kenya, Rwanda, Uganda and the United Republic of Tanzania)	
SARRACENIACEAE Pitcher-plants (New World)	<i>Sarracenia</i> spp. <sup>#4</sup> (Except the species included in Appendix I)	
<i>Sarracenia oreophila</i> <i>Sarracenia rubra</i> ssp. <i>alabamensis</i> <i>Sarracenia rubra</i> ssp. <i>jonesii</i>		
SCROPHULARIACEAE Kutki	<i>Picrorhiza kurroa</i> <sup>#2</sup> (Excludes <i>Picrorhiza scrophulariiflora</i> )	
STANGERIACEAE Stangerias	<i>Bowenia</i> spp. <sup>#4</sup>	
<i>Stangeria eriopus</i>		
TAXACEAE Himalayan yew	<i>Taxus chinensis</i> and infraspecific taxa of this species <sup>#2</sup> <i>Taxus cuspidata</i> and infraspecific taxa of this species <sup>12 #2</sup> <i>Taxus fuana</i> and infraspecific taxa of this species <sup>#2</sup> <i>Taxus sumatrana</i> and infraspecific taxa of this species <sup>#2</sup> <i>Taxus wallichiana</i> <sup>#2</sup>	

<sup>#2</sup> All parts and derivatives except:  
a) seeds and pollen; and  
b) finished products packaged and ready for retail trade.

<sup>#8</sup> Underground parts (i.e. roots, rhizomes): whole, parts and powdered.

<sup>#4</sup> All parts and derivatives, except:  
a) seeds (including seedpods of Orchidaceae), spores and pollen (including pollinia). The exemption does not apply to seeds from Cactaceae spp. exported from Mexico, and to seeds from *Beccariophoenix madagascariensis* and *Neodypsis decaryi* exported from Madagascar;  
b) seedling or tissue cultures obtained *in vitro*, in solid or liquid media, transported in sterile containers;  
c) cut flowers of artificially propagated plants;  
d) fruits, and parts and derivatives thereof, of naturalized or artificially propagated plants of the genus *Vanilla* (Orchidaceae) and of the family Cactaceae;  
e) stems, flowers, and parts and derivatives thereof, of naturalized or artificially propagated plants of the genera *Opuntia* subgenus *Opuntia* and *Selenicereus* (Cactaceae); and  
f) finished products of *Euphorbia antisyphilitica* packaged and ready for retail trade.

<sup>12</sup> Artificially propagated hybrids and cultivars of *Taxus cuspidata*, live, in pots or other small containers, each consignment being accompanied by a label or document stating the name of the taxon or taxa and the text 'artificially propagated', are not subject to the provisions of the Convention.

Appendices		
I	II	III
THYMELAEACEAE (Aquilariaceae) Agarwood, ramin	<b>Aquilaria spp.</b> #14 <b>Gonystylus spp.</b> #4 <b>Gyrinops spp.</b> #14	
TROCHODENDRACEAE (Tetracentraceae) Tetracentron		<b>Tetracentron sinense</b> #1 (Nepal)
VALERIANACEAE Himalayan spikenard	<b>Nardostachys grandiflora</b> #2	
VITACEAE Grapes	<b>Cyphostemma elephantopus</b> <b>Cyphostemma laza</b> <b>Cyphostemma montagnacii</b>	
WELWITSCHIACEAE Welwitschia	<b>Welwitschia mirabilis</b> #4	
ZAMIACEAE Cycads	<b>ZAMIACEAE spp.</b> #4 (Except the species included in Appendix I)	
<b>Ceratozamia spp.</b> <b>Chigua spp.</b> <b>Encephalartos spp.</b> <b>Microcycas calocoma</b>		
ZINGIBERACEAE Ginger lily	<b>Hedychium philippinense</b> #4	
ZYGOPHYLLACEAE Lignum-vitae	<b>Bulnesia sarmientoi</b> #11 <b>Guaiacum spp.</b> #2	

#14 All parts and derivatives except:

- seeds and pollen;
- seedling or tissue cultures obtained *in vitro*, in solid or liquid media, transported in sterile containers;
- fruits;
- leaves;
- exhausted agarwood powder, including compressed powder in all shapes; and
- finished products packaged and ready for retail trade, this exemption does not apply to beads, prayer beads and carvings.

#4 All parts and derivatives, except:

- seeds (including seedpods of Orchidaceae), spores and pollen (including pollinia). The exemption does not apply to seeds from Cactaceae spp. exported from Mexico, and to seeds from *Beccariophoenix madagascariensis* and *Neodypsis decaryi* exported from Madagascar;
- seedling or tissue cultures obtained *in vitro*, in solid or liquid media, transported in sterile containers;
- cut flowers of artificially propagated plants;
- fruits, and parts and derivatives thereof, of naturalized or artificially propagated plants of the genus *Vanilla* (Orchidaceae) and of the family Cactaceae;
- stems, flowers, and parts and derivatives thereof, of naturalized or artificially propagated plants of the genera *Opuntia* subgenus *Opuntia* and *Selenicereus* (Cactaceae); and
- finished products of *Euphorbia antisyphilitica* packaged and ready for retail trade.

#1 All parts and derivatives, except:

- seeds, spores and pollen (including pollinia);
- seedling or tissue cultures obtained *in vitro*, in solid or liquid media, transported in sterile containers;
- cut flowers of artificially propagated plants; and
- fruits, and parts and derivatives thereof, of artificially propagated plants of the genus *Vanilla*.

#2 All parts and derivatives except:

- seeds and pollen; and
- finished products packaged and ready for retail trade.

#11 Logs, sawn wood, veneer sheets, plywood, powder and extracts.

**Annex 812**

J. Hardy & S. O'Connor, "China completes runway on Fiery Cross Reef", *IHS Jane's Defence Weekly* (25 Sept. 2015)



# IHS Jane's 360

## Country Risk

### China completes runway on Fiery Cross Reef

James Hardy, London and Sean O'Connor, Indiana - IHS Jane's Defence Weekly

24 September 2015



#### Key Points

- China has completed the runway on Fiery Cross Reef, its largest base in the Spratly Islands, Airbus Defence and Space satellite imagery dated 20 September has shown
- The completion of the runway could enable China to accelerate construction on the new island and to start patrols over the disputed islands

China has completed the runway on Fiery Cross Reef in the South China Sea and is moving closer to making it operational.

Airbus Defence and Space imagery taken on 20 September shows helipads and bearings - of 050° at one end and 230° the other - painted on the 3,125 m-long runway on the newly created island.

The completion of the runway, which previous imagery suggests only occurred in recent weeks, will enable China to accelerate construction of infrastructure and potentially start air patrols over the Spratly Islands, which are claimed and occupied by a number of countries.

Chinese construction workers continue to build multiple structures on the island, complete the seawall in the harbour, and create concrete road networks. They also appear to have dumped topsoil along the side of the runway; this may be the first attempts to grow food on the island or just be the start of landscaping designed to prevent erosion.

Fiery Cross Reef is the most extensive new landmass built by China in the Spratly Islands and is believed to be the future hub for its operations in the southern reaches of the South China Sea. As such, creation of the island's underlying structure has taken longer than more modest outposts in the area.

Satellite imagery of other Chinese construction sites in the Spratlys suggest that the smaller islands at Hughes, McKennan, Johnson South, Cuateron, and Gaven reefs have been completed and communication and military hardware installed, but that dredging continues at Subi and Mischief Reefs.

**Want to read more? For analysis on this article and access to all our insight content, please enquire about our subscription options [ihsg.com/contact](https://www.ihsg.com/contact)**

To read the full article, [Client Login](#)

(327 of 550 words)





**Annex 813**

Derek Watkins, “What China Has Been Building in the South China Sea”, *New York Times*  
(27 Oct. 2015)



# What China Has Been Building in the South China Sea

By DEREK WATKINS  
UPDATED October 27, 2015

China has been rapidly piling sand onto reefs in the South China Sea, creating seven new islets in the region. It is straining geopolitical tensions that were already taut.

点 看本 中

The speed and scale of China's island-building spree have alarmed other countries with interests in the region. China [announced](#) in June that the creation of islands — moving sediment from the seafloor to a reef — would soon be completed. Since then, China has focused its efforts on construction. So far it has constructed port facilities, military buildings and an airstrip on the islands, with recent imagery showing evidence of two more airstrips under construction. The installations bolster China's foothold in the Spratly Islands, a disputed scattering of reefs and islands in the South China Sea more than 500 miles from the Chinese mainland.

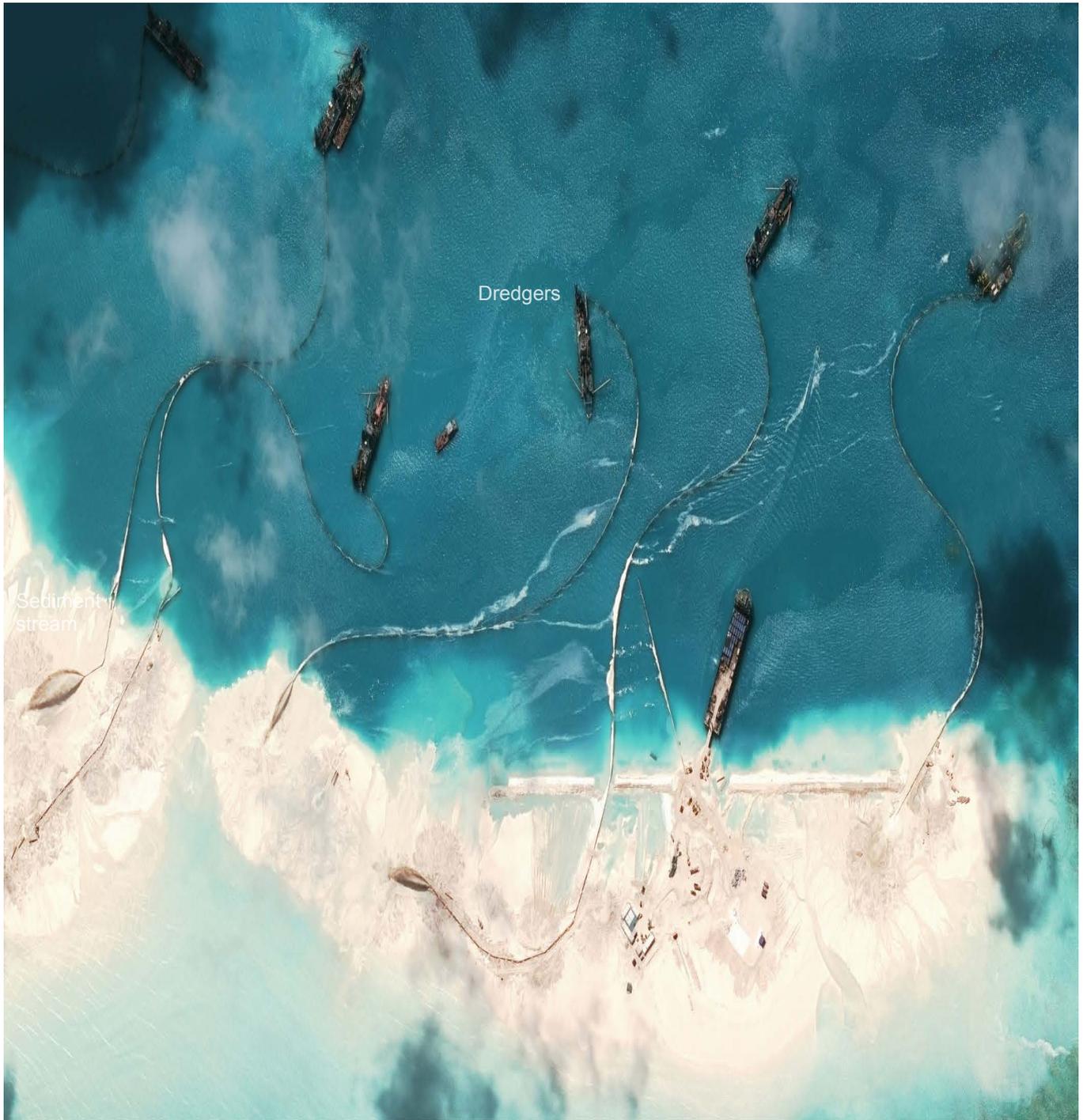
China's activity in the Spratlys is a major point of contention between China and the United States and was a primary topic of discussion between President Obama and President Xi Jinping of China during the Chinese president's visit to the White House in September. On Monday, the United States [sent a Navy destroyer near the islands](#), entering the disputed waters.

Sources: C.I.A., NASA, China Maritime Safety Administration

The new islands allow China to harness a portion of the sea for its own use that has been relatively out of reach until now. Although there are significant fisheries and possible large oil and gas reserves in the South China Sea, China's efforts serve more to fortify its territorial claims than to help it extract natural resources, said Mira Rapp-Hooper, formerly

the director of the [Asia Maritime Transparency Initiative](#) at the Center for Strategic and International Studies, a Washington research group.

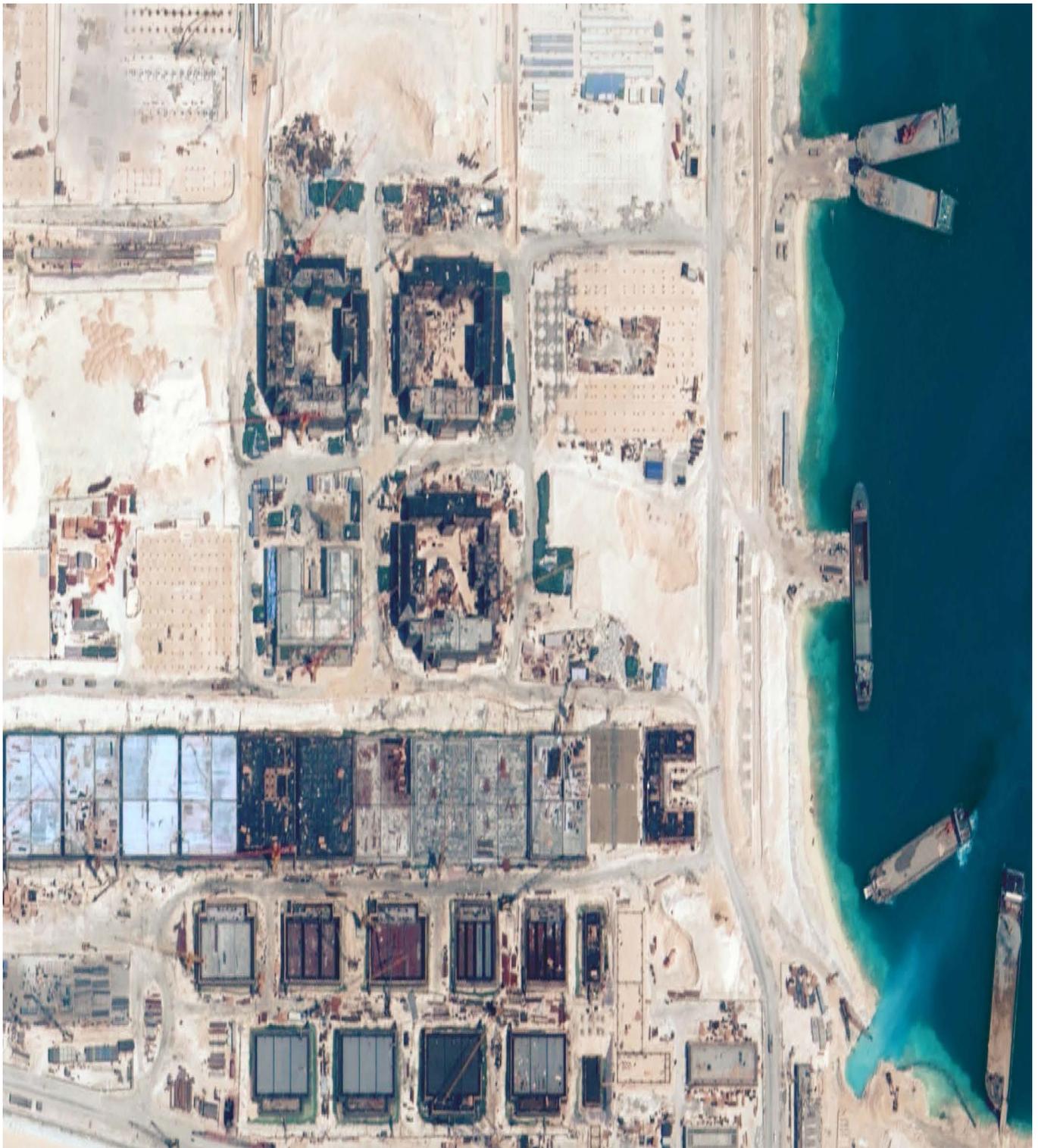
Though too small to support large military units, the islands will enable sustained Chinese air and sea patrols of the area. The United States has reported spotting Chinese mobile artillery vehicles in the region, and the islands could allow China to exercise more control over fishing in the region.



Dredgers pump sediment onto Mischief Reef, March 2015. Image by DigitalGlobe, via CSIS Asia Maritime Transparency Initiative

Several reefs have been destroyed outright to serve as a foundation for new islands, and the process also causes extensive damage to the surrounding marine ecosystem. Frank Muller-Karger, professor of biological oceanography at the University of South Florida, said sediment “can wash back into the sea, forming plumes that can smother marine life and could be laced with heavy metals, oil and other chemicals from the ships and shore facilities being built.” Such plumes threaten the biologically diverse reefs throughout the Spratlys, which Dr. Muller-Karger said may have trouble surviving in sediment-laden water.

The Chinese were relative latecomers to island building in the Spratly archipelago, and “strategically speaking, China is feeling left out,” said Sean O’Connor, principal imagery analyst for IHS Jane’s. Still, China’s island building has far outpaced similar efforts in the area, unsettling the United States, which has [about \\$1.2 trillion](#) in bilateral trade go through the South China Sea every year. Defense Secretary Ashton B. Carter [criticized China’s actions](#) in the region in May, asserting that, “The United States will fly, sail and operate wherever international law allows, as we do all around the world.” The United States reinforced that assertion on Monday [and angered the Chinese](#) when it sent the Lassen, a guided-missile destroyer, within 12 nautical miles of the islands, the conventional limit for territorial waters. According to [statements from David Shear](#), the top Pentagon official in charge of Asia and the Pacific, the last time the United States sent ships or aircraft that close to the islands was in 2012.



Buildings under construction at Fiery Cross Reef, September 2015. Image by DigitalGlobe, via CSIS Asia Maritime Transparency Initiative

---

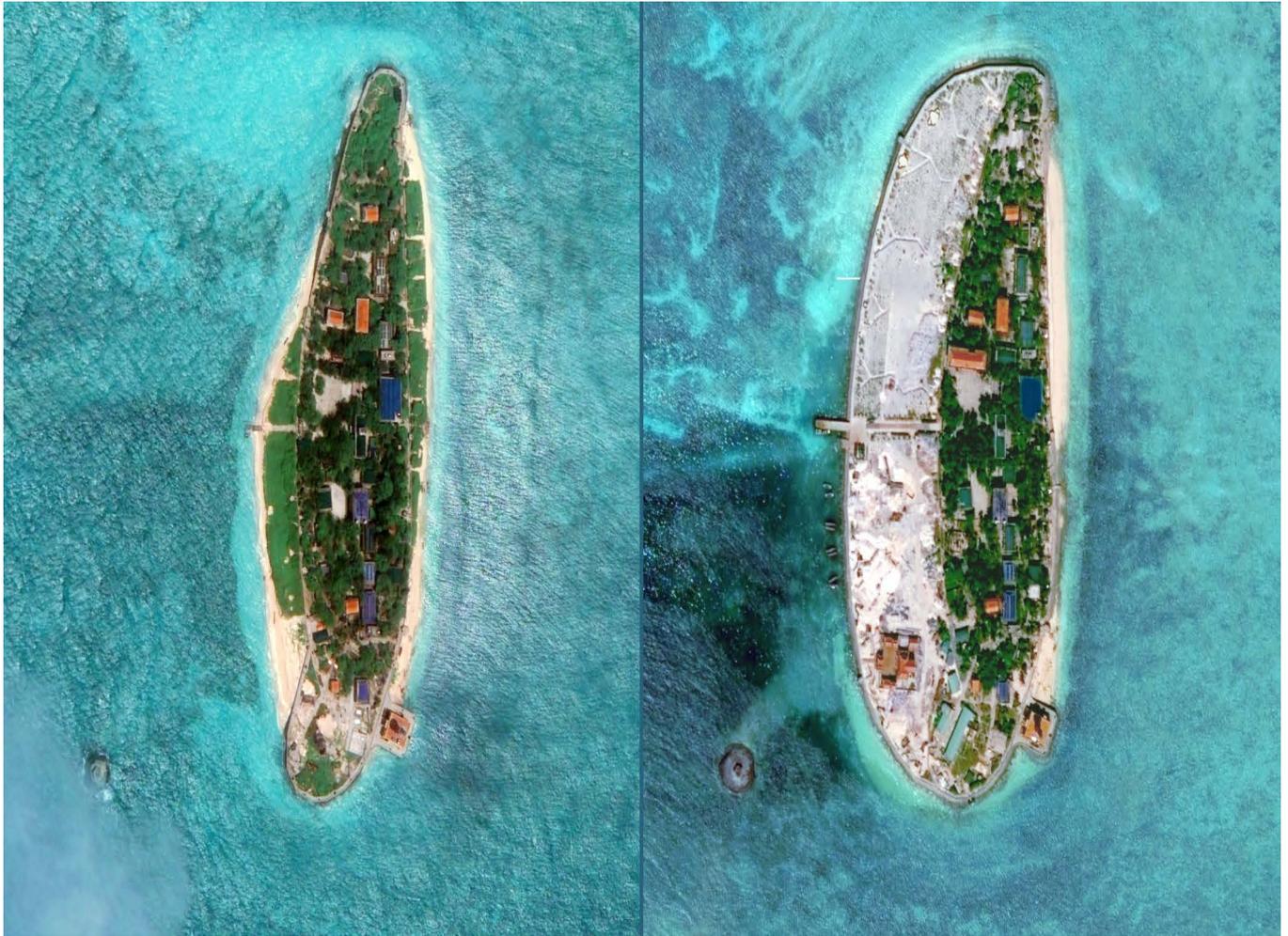
## What Is on the Islands?

Islands and reefs that have undergone recent construction are shown with a . Colored rings show

whether the feature is occupied by **China**, the **Philippines**, **Malaysia**, **Vietnam** or **Taiwan**.



Vietnam, Malaysia, the Philippines and Taiwan have all expanded islands in the Spratlys as well, but at nowhere near the same scale as China.



Land reclamation at Vietnam's Sand Cay. Image by DigitalGlobe, via CSIS Asia Maritime Transparency Initiative

For China, the Fiery Cross Reef is the most strategically significant new island, with an airstrip that is long enough to allow China to land any plane, from fighter jets to large transport aircraft. But China's airstrip is not the first in the region — every other country that occupies the Spratlys already operates one as well.



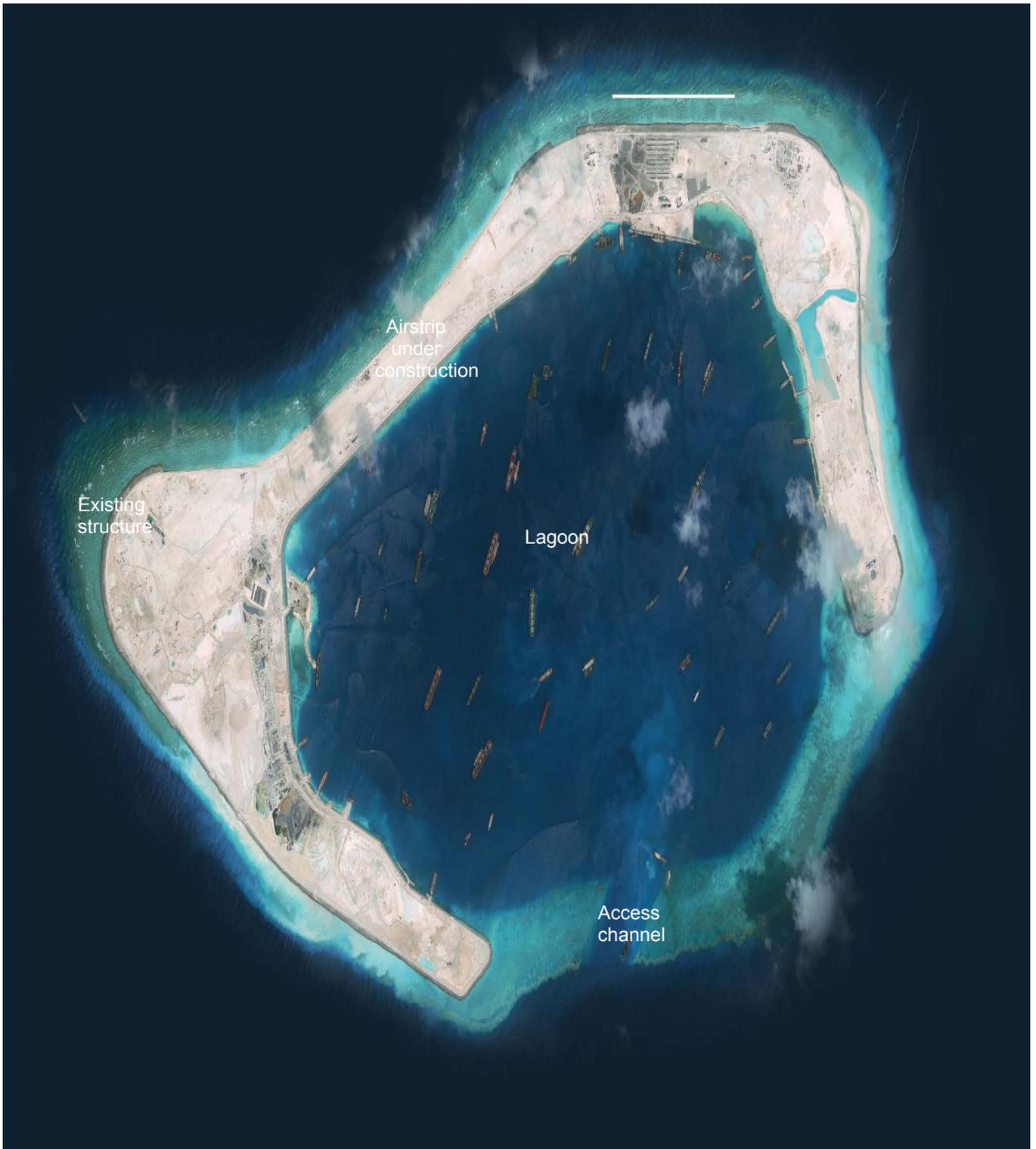
Construction on Fiery Cross Reef, April 2015. Image by CNES distributed by Airbus DS, via IHS Jane's

China's reefs hosted smaller structures for years before the surge in construction. By preserving these initially isolated buildings, **China can claim** that it is merely expanding its earlier facilities, similar to what other countries have done elsewhere in the region.



Construction on Johnson South Reef, May 2015. Image by DigitalGlobe, via CSIS Asia Maritime Transparency Initiative

In recent months, China has nearly completed two of its largest island building projects, at Mischief Reef and Subi Reef. Current imagery shows that China has likely started building airstrips on long, straight sections of each of those islands, which would give the country three airstrips in the area.



China's land reclamation efforts and airstrip construction at Subi Reef, September 2015.  
Image by DigitalGlobe, via CSIS Asia Maritime Transparency Initiative

---

Sources: C.I.A., Congressional Research Service, CSIS Asia Maritime Transparency Initiative, IHS Jane's, NASA, China Maritime Safety Administration



#### **Annex 814**

“Habitación”, *Real Academia Española, Diccionario de la lengua española*  
[*Dictionary of the Royal Spanish Academy*] (accessed 18 Nov. 2015)





REAL ACADEMIA ESPAÑOLA



ASOCIACIÓN DE ACADEMIAS DE LA LENGUA ESPAÑOLA

Diccionario de la lengua española | Edición del Tricentenario

RAE.es



por palabras

Consultar

Consulta posible gracias al compromiso con la cultura de la



Obra Social "la Caixa"

## habitación

Del lat. *habitatio*, *-ōnis*.

1. f. Acción y efecto de habitar.
2. f. Lugar destinado a vivienda.
3. f. En una vivienda, cada uno de los espacios entre tabiques destinados a dormir, comer, etc.
4. f. [dormitorio](#).
5. f. *Der.* Servidumbre personal cuyo poseedor tiene facultad de ocupar en casa ajena las piezas necesarias para sí y para su familia, sin poder arrendar ni traspasar por ningún título este derecho.
6. f. *Ecol.* [hábitat](#).

Real Academia Española © Todos los derechos reservados



Edición del Tricentenario



Guía de consulta



UNIDRAE



Consultas lingüísticas

### Palabra del día

**corralito**

Miércoles, 18 de noviembre de 2015

Biblioteca Clásica



Fundación

Hazte  
benefactor

Ediciones conmemorativas



**Annex 815**

“Habitation”, *Oxford English Dictionary* (accessed 16 Nov. 2015)



# Oxford English Dictionary | The definitive record of the English language

---

## habitation, *n.*

**Pronunciation:** /hæbɪ'teɪʃən/

**Forms:** Also ME **abitacioun**.

**Etymology:** < French *habi-*, *abitation* (12th cent. in Hatzfeld & Darmesteter), < Latin *habitātiōn-em*, < *habitāre* to dwell, inhabit.

“Habitation” in which *h* is written and nat sounded with us.’ Palsgrave 1530, p. 17.

**1.** The action of dwelling in or inhabiting as a place of residence; occupancy by inhabitants.

- c1374 CHAUCER tr. Boethius *De Consol. Philos.* (Cambr.) II. pr. vii. 44 A ryht streyt place to the habytasyoun of men.
- c1386 CHAUCER *Monk's Tale* 226 He was out cast of mannes compaignye With asses was his habitacioun.
- c1410 T. HOCCLEVE *Mother of God* 137 The habitacion Of the holy goost..Be in myn herte.
- 1568 GRAFTON (*title*) *A Chronicle..deduced from the Creation of the Worlde, unto the first habitation of thys Islande.*
- 1667 MILTON *Paradise Lost* VII. 622 Every Starr perhaps a World Of destind habitation.
- 1757 G. SHELVOCKE, JR. *Shelvocke's Voy. round World* (ed. 2) ii. 55 Excepting the plantations, and places of habitation.
- 1897 *Daily Chron.* 1 Feb. 7/4 The premises to be closed..until they were made fit for human habitation.

**2. concr.**

**a.** A place of abode or residence: either the region or country inhabited, or (now more usually) a house, cave, or other particular dwelling-place of man or animal.

- 1382 *Bible* (Wycliffite, E.V.) Acts i. 20 The habitacioun [*a1425 L.V. abitacioun*] of him be maad desert, and be there not that dwellith in it.
- 1477 CAXTON tr. R. Le Fèvre *Hist. Jason* (1913) 94 Hit pleseth me right wele that this noble countre be your habitation.
- 1598 R. BARRET *Theorike & Pract. Mod. Warres* v. 129 Whether the most habitations of the Citie be on high above the alture of the wals.
- 1662 J. DAVIES tr. A. Olearius *Voy. & Trav. Ambassadors* 67 They had no Cities, nor setled Habitacions, but liv'd in Woods.
- 1665 R. HOOKE *Micrographia* 138 These indeed, seem'd to have been the habitation of some Animal.
- 1748 F. SMITH *Voy. Discov. N.W. Passage* I. 184 The Habitacions of the Indians (which we call Cabbins or Tents) are sufficiently wretched.
- 1859 W. COLLINS *Queen of Hearts* I. 129 The nearest habitation to ours was situated about a mile and a half off.

habitation, n. : Oxford English Dictionary

1860 J. TYNDALL *Glaciers of Alps* II. iii. 246 To render the planet a comfortable habitation for beings constituted like ourselves.

*fig.*

1535 *Bible (Coverdale)* Hab. iii. B, The Sonne and Mone remayned still in their habitacion.

1577 *Vicary's Profitable Treat. Anat.* sig. C.ij, The head of man is the habitation or dwelling place of the reasonable soule.

1616 SHAKESPEARE *Henry IV, Pt. 2* (1623) I. iii. 89 An habitation giddy, and vnsure Hath he that buildeth on the vulgar heart.

#### †b. The Jewish tabernacle. *Obs.*

1535 *Bible (Coverdale)* Num. vii. A, Whan Moses had set vp the Habitacion and anoynted it, and sanctified it.

**3.** The name adopted for local branches of the 'Primrose League', a political association established in 1883. (Said to have been suggested by that of 'lodge', used by Masonic societies; cf. also 'tent', 'grove', and the like, similarly used.)

1885 *Primrose League* 13 As a Diploma is issued to every Member, Habitations must be careful to send in the Declarations of every Knight, Dame, or Associate to the Registrar for enrolment.

1892 *Primrose League in Albemarle Rev.* Jan. 11 The first Habitation started was for the district of the Strand.

1892 *Primrose League in Albemarle Rev.* Jan. 13 In drawing up the rules it was sought..to give the affair rather a Masonic character..Accordingly the local committee was called a Habitation.

1895 *Times* 15 Nov. 6/1 A meeting of the Arthur Balfour Habitation of the Primrose League.

#### 4. A settlement. [After French *habitation*.]

1555 R. EDEN tr. Peter Martyr of Angleria *Decades of Newe Worlde* sig. biiij, The interpretacion of certeyne woordes... Colonie, an habitacion.

[1809 E. A. KENDALL *Trav. Northern Parts U.S.* I. ii. 9 In Europe, we speak of settlements, either in a more general sense than colonies, or as included within colonies. The French call them *Habitations*.]

1825 C. WATERTON *Wanderings in S. Amer.* I. i. 101 From Simon's to the great fall there are five habitations of the Indians..These habitations consist of from four to eight huts situated on about an acre of ground.

---

## COMPOUNDS

*Comb.*

**habitation name** *n.* a place-name in which at least one of the elements

habitation, n. : Oxford English Dictionary

denotes an inhabited place.

- 1936 *Oxf. Dict. Eng. Place-names* p. xv, Near habitation-names stand names that originally denoted a pasture-ground or a shelter for the protection of animals, a cowhouse, a cattle-fold, etc.
- 1962 H. R. LOYN *Anglo-Saxon Eng.* i. 9 There are more British habitation names in the region.

**habitation site** *n. Archaeol.* a site where there has been a settlement.

- 1925 *Antiquaries Jrnal.* Apr. 182 The author has more leisure to examine Meare, a similar habitation-site three miles distant.
- 1942 *Oxoniensia* 7 106 The B-beaker and neolithic sherds were drift-sherds from one of the many habitation-sites..in the neighbourhood.
- 1962 H. R. LOYN *Anglo-Saxon Eng.* i. 15 This is not to deny the possibility of continuity in habitation sites at places such as London or York.
- 1971 *World Archaeol.* 3 141 Some of the shelters may have been habitation sites in the past.

---

This entry has not yet been fully updated (first published 1898).



**Annex 816**

“Life”, *Oxford English Dictionary* (accessed 18 Nov. 2015)



# Oxford English Dictionary | The definitive record of the English language

## life, n.

**Pronunciation:** Brit. /laɪf/ , U.S. /laɪf/

**Inflections:** Plural *lives*, (chiefly Sc.) *lifes*.

**Forms:** 1. Singular. a.

α. OE **hlif** (*Northumbrian*), OE–ME **liif**, OE–16 **lif**, OE–16 **lyf**, eME **lef**, ME **lefe**, ME **lijf**, ME **lijfe**, ME **liuf**, ME **liyf**, ME **liyffe**, ME **lyef**, ME **lyif**, ME **lyife**, ME **lyyf**, ME–15 **leyf**, ME–15 **lyefe**, ME–15 **lyeff**, ME–16 **liefe**, ME–16 **liff**, ME–16 **liffe**, ME–16 **lyfe**, ME–16 **lyff**, ME–16 **lyffe**, ME–16 (18 *Irish English (Wexford)*) **lief**, ME– **life**, 15–16 **lieff**; Sc. pre-17 **layf**, pre-17 **layffe**, pre-17 **leife**, pre-17 **lief**, pre-17 **liff**, pre-17 **liffe**, pre-17 **liyf**, pre-17 **luffe** (perh. transmission error), pre-17 **lyef**, pre-17 **lyeff**, pre-17 **lyff**, pre-17 **lyffe**, pre-17 **lyfve**, pre-17 **lyif**, pre-17 **lyife**, pre-17 **lyiff**, pre-17 **lyf**, pre-17 **lyfe**, pre-17 **lif**, pre-17 **life**, pre-17 **leif**.

β. ME **leue**, ME **liue**, ME 16 18– **live** (now *Eng. regional*), ME–15 **lyue**; Sc. pre-17 **leive**, pre-17 **lieiw**, pre-17 **lieve**, pre-17 **liue**, pre-17 **live**, pre-17 **lyue**, pre-17 **lyve**, pre-17 **lywe**.

b. Genitive.

α. OE **liifes**, OE–ME **lyfes**, OE–17 **lifes**, eME **lifæs**, eME **lifess** (*Ormulum*), ME **liffes**, ME **lifis**, ME **lifues**, ME **lijfes**, ME **lyffes**, ME **lyfis**, 16– **life's**; Sc. pre-17 **liffis**, pre-17 **liffys**, pre-17 **lifys**, pre-17 **lyffys**, pre-17 **lyfis**, pre-17 **life's**, 17–18 **lifes**.

β. OE–15 **liues**, ME **liuis**, ME **livis**, ME **livus**, ME **liwes**, ME **lyues**, ME **lyuis**, ME **lyuys**, ME **lyvez**, ME **lyvis**, ME **lyvys**, ME–15 **lyves**, ME–16 **lives**; Sc. pre-17 **lives**, pre-17 **lyvis**, pre-17 **lyvyse**, pre-17 **lywis**.

c. Dative.

α. OE **liife**, OE–ME **life**, OE–ME **lyfe**, eME **lifæ**, ME **liffe**, ME **lifue**, ME **lyffe**, ME **lyfue**; Sc. pre-17 **life**, pre-17 **lyfe**, pre-17 **lyffe**, pre-17 **lyife**.

β. OE–ME **liue**, eME **liuen**, ME **leyue**, ME **live**, ME **liwe**, ME **lyue**, ME **lyve**, ME **lywe**; Sc. pre-17 **lyue**, pre-17 **lyve**, pre-17 **lywe**.

2. Plural.

α. OE–eME **lif**, OE **lyf**, eME **lifen**, ME **liffis**, ME **lifis**, ME **lifues**, ME **lifys**, ME **lijfis**, ME **lyfez**, ME **lyfis**, ME **lyfus**, ME **lyfys**, ME–15 **lyfes**, ME–15 **lyffes**, ME–16 **lives**; Sc. pre-17 **liefes**, pre-17 **liffis**, pre-17 **liffys**, pre-17 **lifis**, pre-17 **lyfes**, pre-17 **lyffiis**, pre-17 **lyffis**, pre-17 **lyffs**, pre-17 **lyffys**, pre-17 **lyfis**, pre-17 **lyiffis**, pre-17 **lyifis**, pre-17 **lives**.

β. eME **liuen**, ME **liuis**, ME **livus**, ME **lyvis**, ME **lyvys**, ME **lywes**, ME–15 **lyues**, ME–16 **liues**, ME– **lives**, 15 **lieves**; Sc. pre-17 **layvis**, pre-17 **liues**, pre-17 **livis**, pre-17 **liwes**, pre-17 **lyues**, pre-17 **lyuis**, pre-17 **lyveis**, pre-17 **lyves**, pre-17 **lyvis**, pre-17 **lywes**, pre-17 **lywis**, pre-17 **lywys**, pre-17 **lives**.

**Etymology:** Cognate with Old Frisian *lif* life, body, person, Old Saxon *lif* life, body (Middle Low German *lif*, *lief* life, body), Old Dutch *lif* life (Middle Dutch *lijf* life, body, person, Dutch *lijf* body), Old High German *lib* life, body, way of life (Middle High German *lîp*, *lîb* life, body, German *Leib* body), Old Icelandic *líf* life, body, Old Swedish *lif* life, body (Swedish *liv* life, body), Danish *liv* life, body < an ablaut variant (*e*-grade) of the Germanic base of LIVE *v.*<sup>1</sup> (zero grade) and LEAVE *v.*<sup>1</sup> (*o*-grade).

Compare Old English *lif*en sustenance, and Middle Dutch *leven* (Dutch *leven*), Middle Low German *lēven*, Old High German *lebēn*, *leben* (Middle High German *leben*, German *Leben*), Gothic *libains*, all in sense 'life', all formed ultimately < the Germanic base of LIVE *v.*<sup>1</sup> Some

life, n. : Oxford English Dictionary

of these coexisted with cognates of *life* for a long time. However, Old English *lifēn* did not survive into Middle English, and Dutch *lijf* and German *Leib* both cease to be found in the sense 'life' in the early modern period.

Compare classical Latin *vīta* (see *VITA n.*<sup>1</sup>) and its reflex French *vie* (see *VIE n.*<sup>1</sup>), which have a similar range of senses, and of which the English word frequently occurs as a translation equivalent. Compare also ancient Greek *ζωή* (see *ZOISM n.*) and Hebrew *nepēš*, which underlie the Latin in some of the biblical passages. In some other biblical contexts translating classical Latin *anima* breath, soul, life (see *ANIMA n.*); compare the underlying ancient Greek *ψυχή* (see *PSYCHE n.*) and Hebrew *nepēš*. These are sometimes also translated as *SOUL n.*

With *while there's life there's hope* at Phrases 8b compare classical Latin 'Aegrotō, *dum anima est, spes esse dicitur*', lit. 'for a sick man, it is said that while he has breath/life, there is hope' (Cicero *Ad Atticum* 9. 10. 3; quoted by Erasmus in the passage translated in quot. 1539 at Phrases 8b).

In *a life for a life* at Phrases 10a after post-classical Latin *animam pro anima* (Vulgate: Exodus 21:23; Leviticus 24:18; Deuteronomy 19:21, translating Hebrew *nepēš taḥaṭ nāpēš*).

With 12c compare e.g. post-classical Latin *haec vita* 'this life' (Vulgate: 1 Corinthians 15:19, translating Hellenistic Greek *ἡ ζωὴ αὐτῆ*), *vita quae nunc est et futura* 'the life that is now and that is to come' (Vulgate: 1 Timothy 4:8, translating Hellenistic Greek *ζωὴ τῆς νῦν καὶ τῆς μελλούσης*).

With *to lose one's life* at Phrases 12c compare French *perdre sa vie* (c1100 in Old French).

In early Middle English the expected pattern is that monosyllabic forms show an unvoiced final consonant (compare Forms 1aα), while inflected disyllabic forms, i.e. the genitive and dative (post-prepositional) forms and the plural, show a voiced medial consonant (compare Forms 1bβ, 1cβ, 2β). It is unclear whether the forms with unexpected *u* / *v* (Forms 1aβ) or *f* (Forms 1bα, 1cα, 2α) are purely graphic or reflect levelling in the paradigm. In modern English the genitive singular shows levelling of the unvoiced consonant, but the plural retains the voiced consonant. (Compare similarly *WIFE n.*, *KNIFE n.*, etc.)

The rare Old English (Northumbrian) form *hlif* probably shows a hypercorrect spelling resulting from the early loss of a distinction between *hl-* and *l-* in this dialect.

## I. The condition or attribute of living or being alive; animate existence. Opposed to death or inanimate existence.

### 1.

#### a. The condition, quality, or fact of being a living person or animal; human or animal existence. Cf. *SOUL n.* 1.

*the meaning of life*: see *MEANING n.*<sup>2</sup> 1d; see also *RIGHT TO LIFE adj.*

OE *Crist I* 227 *Þæt witig god, lifes ordfruma, leoht ond þystro gedælde dryhtlice.*

OE *Beowulf* (2008) 2471 *Þa he of life gewat.*

?c1200 *Ormulum* (Burchfield transcript) l. 9776 *Profetess all wiþþ utenn gillt. Þe33 haffdenn brohht off life.*

c1225 (► ?c1200) *St. Katherine* (1973) l. 252 *He..hersumed seheliche schaftes, blodles ant banles, ant leomen buten liue.*

a1325 (► c1250) *Gen. & Exod.* (1968) l. 201 *God made Adam, And his licham of erðe he nam, And blew ðor-in a liues blast.*

a1413 (► c1385) CHAUCER *Troilus & Criseyde* (Pierpont Morgan) (1881) II. l. 1608 *Lat hym neuere þryue, That doth yow harm and..bryng hym soone of lyue.*

**c.** Vitality or animate existence embodied in an individual person or thing; a person regarded as a living entity. *rare*.

- 1587 SIR P. SIDNEY & A. GOLDING tr. P. de Mornay *Trewnesse Christian Relig.* v. 58 Euey life [Fr. *toute vie*] (if I may so speake) begetteth..issue..in it selfe afore it send it out.
- 1616 SHAKESPEARE *Macbeth* (1623) v. x. 2 Why should I play the Roman Foole, and dye On mine owne sword? whiles I see liues, the gashes Do better vpon them.
- 1850 TENNYSON *In Memoriam* xiii. 20 An awful thought, a life removed, The human-hearted man I loved.
- 1864 TENNYSON *Enoch Arden* 75 Philip..like a wounded life Crept down into the hollows of the wood.
- 1912 J. CONRAD *Secret Sharer* in *'Twiht Land & Sea* 131 Those mountainous seas..seemed ready every moment to swallow up the ship herself and the terrified lives on board her.

**d.** Vitality or activity embodied in material (esp. human or animal) forms. Also: living things collectively (freq. with distinguishing word indicating the nature, location, etc., of the life forms).

*bird-, insect-, pond life*, etc.: see the first element.

- 1728 J. THOMSON *Spring* 12 Well-showr'd Earth Is deep enrich'd with vegetable Life.
- 1733 POPE *Ess. Man* l. 197 From the Life that fills the flood, To that which warbles thro' the vernal wood.
- 1788 GIBBON *Decline & Fall* V. l. 172 The lonesome traveller derives a sort of comfort and society from the presence of vegetable life.
- 1850 TENNYSON *In Memoriam* vii. 9 The noise of life begins again.
- 1858 N. HAWTHORNE *Jrnl.* 8 Jan. in *French & Italian Notebks.* (1980) 14 The life of the scene, too, is infinitely more picturesque than that of London.
- 1864 DICKENS *Our Mutual Friend* (1865) I. i. xiv. 130 Very little life was to be seen on either bank.
- 1926 *Encycl. Brit.* III. 635/2 The 'Formalists' held that the naturalistic theatre was not art, but a soulless attempt to photograph life.
- 1958 *Newnes Compl. Amateur Photogr.* 6 Nowadays the photographer can take his camera underwater, and record the life of the seabed; amateur photomicrographists can explore the world of nature.
- 1992 *Gardener* (BNC) Dec. 57 The gases, largely methane and hydrogen sulphide, can kill most of your pond life including the fish.
- 2007 *Astron. & Geophysics* Feb. 24/2 It now seems clear that stellar winds and magnetism are crucial factors in the origin and viability of life on wet Earth-like planets.

## 5.

**a.** In extended use: something which represents the cause or source of living or of vitality; a vivifying or animating principle; a person who or that which makes or keeps a thing alive (in various senses); 'soul'; 'essence'. In modern use chiefly in ***the life (and soul) of (something, esp. a party)***.

In quot. 1715: (*poet. nonce-use*) = LIFE BLOOD *n.* 1.

- OE ÆLFRIC *Catholic Homilies: 1st Ser.* (Royal) (1997) x. 262 Ðæs lichaman lif is seo sawul, & þære saule lif



**Annex 817**

“Mantener”, *Real Academia Española, Diccionario de la lengua española*  
[*Dictionary of the Royal Spanish Academy*] (accessed 18 Nov. 2015)







ASOCIACIÓN DE ACADEMIAS DE LA LENGUA ESPAÑOLA

Diccionario de la lengua española | Edición del Tricentenario

RAE.es

Consulta posible gracias al compromiso con la cultura de la


**mantener** Conjugar

 Del lat. *manu tenēre* 'tener en la mano'.

Conjug. c. tener.

1. tr. Proveer a alguien del alimento necesario. U. t. c. **prnl.**
2. tr. Costear las necesidades económicas de alguien.
3. tr. Conservar algo en su ser, darle vigor y permanencia.
4. tr. Sostener algo para que no caiga o se tuerza.
5. tr. Proseguir en lo que se está ejecutando. **Mantener la conversación, el juego.**
6. tr. Defender o sustentar una opinión o sistema.
7. tr. Sostener un torneo, una justa, *etc.*
8. tr. **Der.** Amparar a alguien en la posesión o goce de algo.
9. **prnl.** Dicho de un cuerpo: Estar en un medio o en un lugar, sin caer o haciéndolo muy lentamente.
10. **prnl.** Perseverar, no variar de estado o resolución.
11. **prnl.** Fomentarse, alimentarse.

Real Academia Española © Todos los derechos reservados



Edición del Tricentenario



Guía de consulta



UNIDRAE



Consultas lingüísticas

### Palabra del día

**corralito**

Miércoles, 18 de noviembre de 2015

Biblioteca Clásica



Fundación



Ediciones conmemorativas



**Annex 818**

“Rock”, *Oxford English Dictionary* (accessed 18 Nov. 2015)



# Oxford English Dictionary | The definitive record of the English language

## rock, n.<sup>1</sup>

**Pronunciation:** Brit. /rɒk/ , U.S. /ræk/

**Forms:** OE **rocc** (in compounds), ME **roc**, ME **ro**<sub>3</sub>, ME–15 **roke**, ME–15 **rokk**, ME–15 **rokke** , ME–16 **rocke**, ME–16 **rok**, ME– **rock**, 15 **roocke**, 15 **rough**, 16 **rauke** (*Eng. regional (Essex)*); *Sc.* pre-17 **rocke**, pre-17 **roik**, pre-17 **rok**, pre-17 **roik**, pre-17 **roque**, pre-17 **rouk**, pre-17 **roulk**, pre-17 **rowk**, pre-17 **rox** (plural), pre-17 **royk**, pre-17 17– **rock**, 18 **roke**.

**Etymology:** In Old English (apparently only in *stānrocc* STONEROCK *n.*) < post-classical Latin *rocca* (see below); subsequently reinforced by or reborrowed from Anglo-Norman *rokke* and Old French (chiefly northern) *roke*, Middle French (chiefly regional) *roque*, *rocque* (c1100; compare also Anglo-Norman and Old French, Middle French, French *roche* (end of the 10th cent.), feminine noun, and Middle French, French *roc* (c1370), masculine noun, probably showing influence from Old Occitan) large mass of stone, cliff, crag, etc., detached mass of stone (end of the 10th cent.), stone as a material for construction (1178), cave, cavern (c1210), fortress built on a rock, citadel (c1245), probably showing the reflex of a Romance base attested earliest in post-classical Latin *rocca* (from 8th cent., especially in French sources), *roca* (9th cent.), and also reflected by Old Occitan *roca* , *rocha* (mid 11th cent.), Catalan *roca* (9th cent.; also *roc* , masculine), Spanish *roca* (early 14th cent.), Portuguese *roca* (beginning of the 11th cent.), and also Italian *rocca* large mountain fortress situated in an isolated place (beginning of the 13th cent.); the word is also reflected by many place names in France and Italy; further etymology uncertain and disputed: a Celtic origin has been suggested (compare Breton *roc'h* ), but is not generally accepted; see further *Französisches etymol. Wörterbuch* at *\*rocca*. Compare also ( < French) post-classical Latin *rocha* (12th cent.), Portuguese *rocha* (1156), Italian *roccia* (a1313), Middle Dutch *roche* , *roke* , *roetse* , *rotse* (Dutch *rots* ), Middle Low German *rutse* , *rotse* , Middle High German *rosche* , *rotsche* . Compare earlier STONEROCK *n.*, and also ROCHE *n.*<sup>1</sup>, ROACH *n.*<sup>2</sup>

The occasional morphological double plural form *rockses* is attested in several varieties of regional English, e.g. in south-western England, northern Ireland, etc.

In sense 5d probably short for *rock sugar n.* at Compounds 2a(a); compare earlier ROCK CANDY *n.*

With the sense development in English compare also Middle French, French *roche* in the later senses: support, refuge (1553, in religious context), something firm or unshakeable (1587; compare *coeur de roche* , lit. 'heart of rock' (a1573)).

Also attested early in the place name *Rok'* , Northumberland (1242; 1164 as *Roch* (see ROCHE *n.*<sup>1</sup>); now Rock); compare also *Rocke* , Devon (1330; now Rock) and the place names listed at STONEROCK *n.*

### I. Literal uses.

**1.** A large rugged mass of hard mineral material (see sense 2a) or stone forming a cliff, crag, or other natural feature on land or in the sea. Cf.

STONE *n.* 1b.

Recorded earliest in STONEROCK *n.*

OE *Aldhelm Glosses* (Brussels 1650) in L. Goossens *Old Eng. Glosses of MS Brussels, Royal Libr. 1650* (1974) 278 *Scopulorum : saxorum eminentium, stanrocca uel torra.*

c1250 in C. Brown *Eng. Lyrics 13th Cent.* (1932) 38 (*MED*), Iudas, go þou on þe roc, heie up-on þe ston, lei þin heued i my barm, slep þou þe anon.

rock, n.1 : Oxford English Dictionary

- c1384 *Bible* (Wycliffite, E.V.) (Douce 369(2)) (1850) 1 Macc. x. 73 Hou shalt thou mowe susteyne rydyng, and so grete oost in the feeld, where is no stoon, ne rocke [L. *saxum*], nether place of fleeyngne?
- c1430 (▸ c1386) CHAUCER *Legend Good Women* (Cambr. Gg.4.27) (1879) l. 2193 The holwe rokkis answerden hire a-gayn.
- 1486 *Bk. St. Albans* sig. diii<sup>v</sup> (MED), Ther is a Fawken of the rock, And that is for a duke.
- a1500 *Lapidary* in *MS Bodl.* 558 24 (MED), Other maner of Saphires there be founde faste by a grete rok þat men calle Paray.
- a1538 T. STARKEY *Dial. Pole & Lupset* (1989) 44 Lyke as maryners..by neclygence run upon some roke.
- c1540 (▸ ?a1400) *Gest Historiale Destr. Troy* 5699 His shippes..rut on a Rocke & rent all to peses.
- 1606 G. W. tr. Justinus *Hist.* XII. 53 He came to a maruellous rough and huge rocke, into which many people were fled.
- a1616 SHAKESPEARE *Two Gentlemen of Verona* (1623) I. ii. 122 That, some whirle-winde beare Vnto a ragged, fearefull, hanging Rocke, And throw it thence into the raging Sea.
- 1687 A. LOVELL tr. J. de Thévenot *Trav. into Levant* I. 140 A pair of stairs cut out in the Rock.
- 1718 LADY M. W. MONTAGU *Let.* 31 July (1965) I. 424 We..came safe to Malta... It is a whole Rock cover'd with very little Earth.
- 1747 J. HERVEY *Medit.* II. 85 The moon is of signal service..to the Mariner..to explore his way and under the influence of this beaming Sconce, to avoid the fatal rock.
- 1774 O. GOLDSMITH *Hist. Earth* I. 156 Splitting the most solid rocks, and thus shattering the summits of the mountain.
- 1843 J. RUSKIN *Mod. Painters* I. II. i. §4 Every minor rock comes out from the soil about it as an island out of the sea.
- 1860 J. TYNDALL *Glaciers of Alps* I. vii. 49 We diverged from the snow to the adjacent rocks.
- 1887 *Longman's Mag.* May 70 Halting there to explore and climb some jutting rock whose peak promises a wider view over all the surrounding little archipelagoes.
- 1921 *Mariner's Mirror* 7 28/1 A skerry..is a rock without grass as a rule, which is not covered with a flood.
- 1969 *Times* 23 Aug. (Saturday Rev.) p. viii/2 A castle with rounded turrets perched high upon a rock.
- 2003 *Vibe* Mar. 158/4 Built on a rock over Paradise Beach, this 3,000-square-meter theater-like club is glamorous and decadent.

**2.**

**a.** The solid mineral material forming much of the substance of the earth (or any similar planetary body), whether exposed on the surface or overlain by soil, sand, mud, etc. Also *fig.* and in figurative context, chiefly alluding to qualities of hardness, durability, or immobility. Cf. **STONE n.**

**2a.**

See note at sense 2b. *alum-*, *garnet-*, *phosphate*, *red*, *sand-*, *soap-*, *whin-rock*, etc.: see the first element.

- a1398 J. TREVISA tr. Bartholomaeus Anglicus *De Proprietatibus Rerum* (BL Add. 27944) (1975) II. XVI. xxxvi. 844 Þe stoon of þe which bras is blew..brekeþ nought esilich but it be ybrend first wiþ strong fyre in þe rokke.
- 1532 (▸ c1385) *Usk's Test. Love* in W. W. Skeat *Chaucerian & Other Pieces* (1897) 135 So ofte falleth the lethly water on the harde rocke til it have thorow persed it.

rock, n.1 : Oxford English Dictionary

- 1590 SPENSER *Faerie Queene* I. VII. sig. G3, But all of Diamond..It framed was, one massy entire mould,  
Hewen out of Adamant rocke with engines keene.
- 1604 E. GRIMESTON tr. J. de Acosta *Nat. & Morall Hist. Indies* III. xvii. 173 In running, the water turnes to  
rocke.
- 1623 SHAKESPEARE & J. FLETCHER *Henry VIII* I. i. 158 To th' King Ile say't, & make my vouch as strong As  
shore of Rocke.
- 1667 MILTON *Paradise Lost* XI. 494 Sight so deform what heart of Rock could long Drie-ey'd behold?
- 1719 D. DEFOE *Life Robinson Crusoe* 50 What the Shore was, whether Rock or Sand, whether Steep or  
Shoal, we knew not.
- 1785 W. COWPER *Task* v. 534 We build with what we deem eternal rock: A distant age asks where the  
fabric stood.
- 1842 TENNYSON *Morte d'Arthur* in *Poems* (new ed.) II. 6 Stepping down By zigzig paths, and juts of  
pointed rock.
- 1888 F. HUME *Madame Midas* I. Prol. 16 Their combined action had broken off great masses of rock.
- 1927 W. CATHER *Death comes for Archbishop* Prol. 1 The hidden garden..was a mere shelf of rock,  
overhanging a steep declivity.
- 1960 L. D. STAMP *Britain's Struct. & Scenery* (ed. 5) ix. 79 Into these cracks molten rock forced its way so  
that dykes were formed.
- 1973 *Daily Tel.* 13 Mar. 19/4 The Lunokhod 2 robot mooncar has..resumed studies of Moon soil and rock  
and taking photographs.
- 1991 J. LEVESQUE *Rosseter's Memory* iv. 58 In the winter..the horseshit in the street was hard as rock and  
good for road hockey.
- 2007 T. FRIEND *Third Domain* vi. 182 As water seeps through cracks in rock, it dissolves certain  
compounds.

**b. A particular kind of such material. Cf. STONE n. 2c.**

Rocks are distinguished by their composition and their physical properties, and consist of aggregates of minerals (very commonly silicates or calcium carbonate) and occasionally also organic matter (as in, for example, lignite and oil shale). They vary in hardness, and include soft materials such as clays. Rocks form the substance of the earth's crust and mantle, down to the upper surface of the metallic core. Those occurring at the earth's surface are broadly divided into three classes according to their process of formation: *igneous*, *metamorphic*, and *sedimentary*.

- 1671 T. TENISON *Let.* 6 Apr. in H. Oldenburg *Corr.* (1970) VII. 553 This Rock abounds wth a Glassie  
matter of irregular figure, unlike to that of ye transparent stones wch, by & by, I shall speak of more  
largelie.
- 1753 S. SHUCKFORD *Creation & Fall of Man* viii. 133 Little Particles..which have..in the Maturation of  
Ages, remained sandy and sabulous..or become Rocks or Minerals.
- 1789 J. WILLIAMS *Nat. Hist. Mineral Kingdom* I. 3 Lime~stone, whinstone, basaltes, and many other hard  
rocks, continue firm..quite up to the superficies of the strata.
- 1813 J. M. GOOD et al. *Pantologia* at *Sienite*, This rock is composed essentially of crystals of felspar and  
hornblende.
- 1845 J. PHILLIPS *Geol.* in *Encycl. Metrop.* VI. 537 The series of stratified rocks in the North of England.
- 1878 T. H. HUXLEY *Physiogr.* (ed. 2) 169 The rocks are comparatively soft, consisting for the most part of  
sands, clays and chalk.
- 1923 L. D. STAMP *Introd. Stratigr.* iii. 36 The whole area of S.E. England consists of a blanket of Mesozoic



**Annex 819**

“Sustain”, *Oxford English Dictionary* (accessed 18 Nov. 2015)



# Oxford English Dictionary | The definitive record of the English language

## sustain, *v.*

**Pronunciation:** Brit. /sə'steɪn/ , U.S. /sə'steɪn/

### Forms:

α. ME **sosteine**, ME **sosteini** (*south-west midl.*), ME **sostene**, ME **sosteyne**, ME **sostine**, ME **sostyene** (*south-east.*), ME **sostyeni** (*south-east.*), ME **sousteene**, ME **sousteine**, ME **sousteini** (*south-west midl.*), ME **soustene**, ME **sousteyne**, ME **suisteined** (past participle, perh. transmission error), ME **susteene**, ME **susteini** (*south-west midl.*), ME **susteiny** (*south-west midl.*), ME **susten**, ME **susteni**, ME **susteny** (*south-west.*), ME **susteyigne**, ME **susteyni** (*south-west midl.*), ME **susteyny** (*south-west midl.*), ME **susteynye** (*south-west midl.*), ME **sustien**, ME **sustiene**, ME **sustyene**, ME **sustyne**, ME **svnsteyne** (transmission error), ME **yusteyned** (past participle, transmission error), ME 16 **susteen**, ME-15 **substeyne**, ME-15 **susteign**, ME-15 **sustigne**, ME-16 **sustaine**, ME-16 **sustayn**, ME-16 **sustayne**, ME-16 **susteigne**, ME-16 **susteine**, ME-16 **sustene**, ME-16 **susteyn**, ME-16 **susteyne**, ME- **sustain**, IME **stysteneyns** (3rd singular present indicative, transmission error), 15-16 **sustein**, 15-16 **swstene**; *Sc.* pre-17 **sestynnit** (past participle), pre-17 **soustenyt** (past tense), pre-17 **suestnit** (past tense), pre-17 **sustaine**, pre-17 **sustane**, pre-17 **sustayne**, pre-17 **sustean**, pre-17 **susteane**, pre-17 **susteene**, pre-17 **sustein**, pre-17 **susteine**, pre-17 **susten**, pre-17 **sustene**, pre-17 **susteyn**, pre-17 **susteyne**, pre-17 **sustine**, pre-17 **swstyne**, pre-17 17- **sustain**, pre-17 18- **susteen**.

β. ME **suteigne**, ME **suteynde** (past participle), ME **suteyned** (past participle).

**Etymology:** < Anglo-Norman *sustainer*, *susteigner*, *sustener*, *sustigner*, *sostener*, Anglo-Norman and Old French *sustenir*, Anglo-Norman and Old French, Middle French *soustenir*, *sostenir*, Old French, Middle French *soutenir* (French *soutenir*) to bear, withstand, endure (c880), to provide food for (c1050), to strengthen (c1100), to bear the weight of, hold up (c1140), (of a person) to stand up, remain standing (c1165), to provide the means of subsistence (for someone) (c1170), to provide moral or psychological support for (someone) (13th cent.), to keep in existence, to perpetuate (early 13th cent.), to continue, to defend, support (an opinion, belief, statement, cause, etc.) (both 1269-78; compare *soutenir un thèse* (1649)), to bear a charge or expense (1297), to uphold (a person's reputation, honour, etc.) (1340) < classical Latin *sustinēre* to hold up, support, to maintain, preserve, to uphold, to keep from failing or giving way, to support with food or resources, to withstand, to bear the weight of, shoulder, to play the part of, to submit to, endure, to tolerate, to hold back, to put off, defer, in post-classical Latin also to wait for (Vetus Latina) < *sus-* SUB-prefix + *tenēre* to hold, keep (see TENANT *n.*). Compare Old Occitan *sostener*, Catalan *sostenir* (1272), Spanish *sostener* (1218), Portuguese *suster* (13th cent.), Italian *sostenere* (a1292).

In Middle English prefixed and unprefixed forms of the past participle are attested (see *γ-* prefix).

The forms probably partly reflect variation in the stem of the Old French verb: compare forms and see further discussion at MAINTAIN *v.*, and compare also RETAIN *v.*, PERTAIN *v.*, DETAIN *v.*, CONTAIN *v.*

In branch III. immediately after post-classical Latin *sustinere* to wait for (Vetus Latina).

In sense 4c after French *soutenir* (1649 in this use).

### I. To support, maintain, uphold.

#### 1. *trans.*

**a.** To keep in existence, maintain; *spec.* to cause to continue in a certain

sustain, v. : Oxford English Dictionary

state for an extended period or without interruption; to keep or maintain at the proper level, standard, or rate; to preserve the status of. Also, in early use, with *up*.

- c1300 *St. Katherine* (Laud) 68 in C. Horstmann *Early S.-Eng. Legendary* (1887) 94 Þis Aumperour sende..is sonde Þat þe gretteste maistres of clergie to him comen..for-to susteinen op heore lawe þoru strenþe of clergie.
- c1300 *St. Thomas Becket* (Laud) 1605 in C. Horstmann *Early S.-Eng. Legendary* (1887) 152 (MED), He þat sosteinez vuele lawes, ase wel he haueth sunne.
- c1325 (► c1300) *Chron. Robert of Gloucester* (Calig.) 7697 No time nas Þet pes bet isustained þan bi his time was.
- c1325 (► c1300) *Chron. Robert of Gloucester* (Calig.) 6507 (MED), He..muhe louede holi chirche & susteinede al so.
- 1340 *Ayenbite* (1866) 57 Þo þet þe tauernes sustyeneþ byeþ uelaþes of alle þe zennen þat byeþ y-do ine hare tauernes.
- c1400 (► c1378) LANGLEND *Piers Plowman* (Laud 581) (1869) B. IX. l. 108 Trewe wedded libbing folk..mote worche & wynne and þe worlde susteyne.
- c1405 (► c1390) CHAUCER *Man of Law's Tale* (Hengwrt) (2003) l. 294 The honour of his regne to sustene.
- a1449 LYDGATE *Minor Poems* (1934) II. 777 Trewe iuges and sergeauntis of the lawe..Holde trouthe and sustene rightwisnesse.
- ?1483 CAXTON tr. *Caton* I. sig. dj, He deyed for to holde & susteyne the lawe & trouthe.
- a1500 tr. A. Chartier *Traité de l'Esperance* (Rawl.) 59 Whanne Ligurgus and Foreus..had stablischid the lawes, thei reseruid vnto the princes for to declare and susteyne them.
- 1590 SPENSER *Faerie Queene* II. II. sig. O5<sup>v</sup>, That great Queene..That with her soueraine powre,..All Faery lond does peaceably sustene.
- 1667 DRYDEN *Annus Mirabilis 1666* xlvi. 13 Two Chiefs..Each able to sustain a Nations fate.
- 1697 DRYDEN tr. Virgil *Æneis* I, in tr. Virgil *Wks.* 213 Remus with Quirinus shall sustain, The righteous Laws.
- 1700 M. PRIOR *Carmen Sæculare* 1 Happy Pow'r sustain'd by wholesom Laws.
- a1760 I. H. BROWNE *Poems* (1768) 126 Thus happy, I reck not of France nor of Spain, Nor the balance of power what hand shall sustain.
- 1836 J. GILBERT *Christian Atonem.* vi. 212 The rule of good, no longer enforced by its proper penalties, requires to be sustained by some equivalent expedient.
- 1841–8 F. MYERS *Catholic Thoughts* II. IV. §45. 406 If it [sc. Protestantism] has destroyed much it has also created much, and is now sustaining much.
- 1875 H. E. MANNING *Internal Mission of Holy Ghost* viii. 211 We are creatures who have come forth from His omnipotence, and are sustained by His almighty power.
- 1935 H. A. L. FISHER *Hist. Europe* I. xv. 179 Swedish mercenaries..helped to sustain the Byzantine state.
- 1945 *New Biol.* 1 42 A gross reproduction rate sustained at a level below 1.0 signifies that no reduction of mortality could save the community from eventual extinction.
- 1990 *Atlantic* May 54/1 The caution nuclear capabilities encourage and the bipolarity they sustain have created the framework for a reasonably stable international order.
- 2005 *Wall St. Jrnl.* (Central ed.) 31 Jan. B7/6 [He] dismissed skeptics' concerns about the company's ability to sustain its rate of growth.

sustain, v. : Oxford English Dictionary

†**b.** To maintain (a physical object) in good condition or working order; *spec.* (a) to maintain (a building) in good repair; (b) to keep (a lamp, candle, etc.) burning. *Obs.*

- a1325 *Statutes of Realm* (2011) 4 He þat hald þe warde of suech lond, also longe ase he hit hald he sal sustenen þe huses, parkes, visweres, stuwes, mullen ant alle oþer þinges þat fallez to þe londe.
- ?a1400 ( ▶ a1338) R. MANNYNG *Chron.* (Petyt) II. 20 (*MED*), Pre þousand marke he gaf..To Petir & Paule of Rome, to susteyn þer light.
- c1431 in H. Littlehales *Medieval Rec. London City Church* (1905) 15 That the same Wardeyns & their Successours fynde & susteyn v tapers of wexe..to brenne vpon my candylstyck.
- a1475 in A. Clark *Eng. Reg. Godstow Nunnery* (1906) II. 491 And they shold susteyne the seid mese, with ther owne costis, in al so good state or better than they resceived hit.
- a1475 in A. Clark *Eng. Reg. Godstow Nunnery* (1906) II. 602, ij lampes to be susteyned with oyle.
- 1544 tr. T. Littleton *Tenures* (new ed.) I. viii. 16 Yf a house be let, to holde at wyl, the lessee is nat holden to susteyne or repayre the house.
- 1592 W. WEST *Symbolæogr.: 1st Pt.* §103 C, The saide J. shall well..sustaine & maintaine the houses & buildings which be..builded.

**c.** To provide for the upkeep, running, or general maintenance of (an institution, establishment, estate, etc.).

- c1350 *Apocalypse St. John: A Version* (Harl. 874) (1961) 90 (*MED*), Pe mone þat is vnder hire feet ben bitokned erpelich þinges wiþ whiche holy chirche oweþ to be sustened in þis dedlich lijf.
- a1425 ( ▶ ?a1400) CHAUCER *Romaunt Rose* (Hunterian) (1891) l. 5636 He spareth..His pore estate forto sustene.
- c1475 tr. A. Chartier *Quadrilogue* (Univ. Coll. Oxf.) (1974) 173 (*MED*), The peeple is a notable membre of a reame withoute the whiche the chirche nor the nobles may neur suffise to make a body of policye nor to susteyne there estates.
- 1545 G. JOYE *Expos. Daniel* f. 68, The pore congregacions and comon scoles and vniuersities be sustained and maintayned.
- 1627 *Rep. Parishes Scotl.* (1835) 127 Thair is a schoole bot sustained by the labouraris of the grovnd.
- 1688 P. RYCAUT tr. G. de la Vega *Royal Comm. Peru* (new ed.) IV. ii. 662 They should be unable to support and sustain their Monasteries, and Churches, and Hospitals.
- 1787 *Parl. Reg. Ireland* VII. 81 If the hand of parliament did not sustain the institution now in question, it must fall to ruin.
- 1824 A. CARY *Addr. Mass. Charitable Mech. Assoc.* 21 The liberality and discretion with which he has sustained other institutions for industrial and technical education.
- 1891 E. M. BLISS *Encycl. Missions* II. 492/2 The Society sustains six day-schools, four of which are for Mohammedan *pardah* girls.
- 1917 A. CAHAN *Rise of David Levinsky* II. i. 27 Like most *yeshivahs*, it was sustained by donations, and instruction in it was free.
- 1994 *N.Y. Rev. Bks.* 23 June 17/2 Diana has..got back more than 3,000 hectares of the estate which originally sustained the castle.

**2. trans.**

**a.** To maintain (a person, etc.) in life and health; to provide with food, drink, and other substances necessary for remaining alive; to feed, to keep.

(a) With a person, an animal, one's body, etc., as object.

- c1300 *St. Edmund Rich* (Laud) 552 in C. Horstmann *Early S.-Eng. Legendary* (1887) 447 He was at pounteneye swiþe faire under-fongue And isusteyned [c1300 *Harl.* isustened] in his anuy.
- c1325 (► c1300) *Chron. Robert of Gloucester* (Calig.) 2354 He nadde noȝt inou is kniȝtes to soustene.
- c1400 (► c1378) LANGLAND *Piers Plowman* (Laud 581) (1869) B. XV. l. 275 Þorw þe mylke of þat mylde best þe man was susteyned.
- ?a1425 *Mandeville's Trav.* (Egerton) (1889) 68 Of concubines ilke man takes als many as he may sustene of his gudes.
- c1450 (► c1350) *Alexander & Dindimus* (Bodl.) (1929) l. 797 Alle þe godus þat ȝe geten..Seruen for to sustaine ȝour unsely wombe.
- ?1483 CAXTON tr. *Caton* l. sig. aijj, Thou oughtest to loue thy fader and moder nexte after god, and to..susteyne them in theyr necessarytees.
- c1500 *Melusine* (1895) 187 They oughte to helpe and susteyne the wydowes an orphenyns.
- 1596 T. NASHE *Haue with you to Saffron-Walden* sig. F2, Not content to..sustaine his hungry bodie with wythred scallions and greene cheese.
- 1653 H. HAMMOND *Paraphr. & Annot. New Test.* 21 Bread or ordinary means of susteining men.
- 1667 MILTON *Paradise Lost* v. 415 Whatever was created, needs To be sustaind and fed.
- 1685 J. EVELYN *Diary* (1955) IV. 482 The daughter of a poore labouring man who sustain'd her parents..by her labour.
- 1712 J. BOCKETT *Gentile Divinity & Morality* 58 Fathers get Riches with Deceit and Craft to sustain their Children.
- 1777 W. ROBERTSON *Hist. Amer.* I. IV. 322 The difficulty of sustaining their children becomes so great, that it is not uncommon to abandon or destroy them.
- 1828 *New Monthly Mag.* Mar. 272 [He] lost it to the last livre, and had nothing left to retrieve his losses, or to sustain his family.
- 1899 *Gleanings Bee Culture* 1 Apr. 257/1 If I resided outside of a city, I could easily live and sustain my family on the product of the bee business.
- 1922 *Amer. Jrnl. Clin. Med.* July 522/2 Doctor Martin was a son of a farmer—one who toiled and sustained his family from the earth itself.
- 1974 D. DAMAS *Nomads of North* in J. Billard *World of Amer. Indian* 78 (caption) To sustain family and dogs, an inland hunter had to kill 150 or more of these animals a year.

(b) *refl.*

- ?a1325 in W. Heuser *Kildare-Gedichte* (1904) 124 (MED), Sum þer beþ þat swinkþ sore Winne catel to hab more, Ham silf fair to susteni.
- 1389 in J. T. Smith & L. T. Smith *Eng. Gilds* (1870) 40 He may nought ne haue nouȝthe to susteyne him self.
- 1491 in *Rec. Parl. Scotl. to 1707* (2007) 1491/4/10 Gif the said are have na blanchferme nor fewferme landis, to sustene thaim on.